This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Wall 1208.65.2

HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

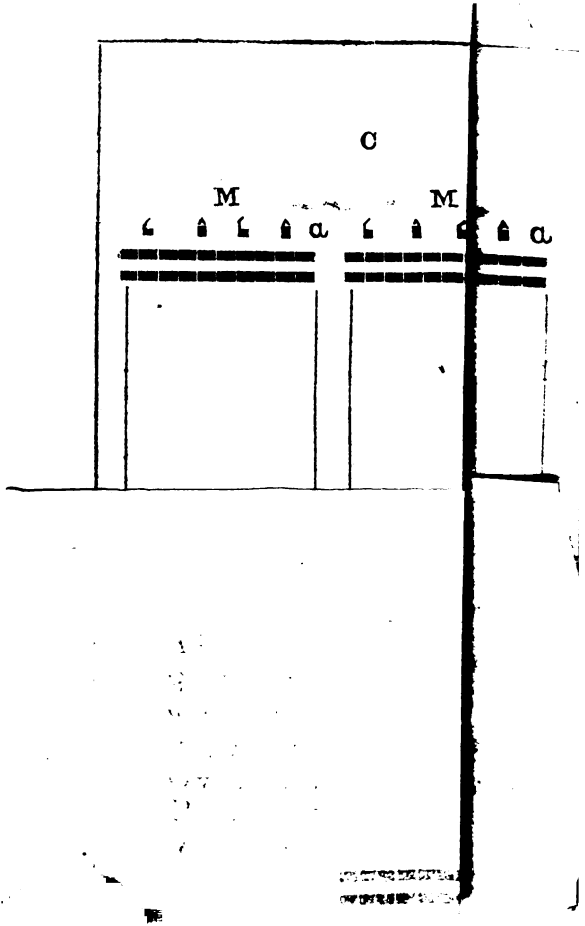
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

1865.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

RIFLE

AND

LIGHT INFANTRY TACTICS;

FOR

THE EXERCISE AND MANEUVERS

OF

TROOPS WHEN ACTING AS LIGHT INFANTRY OR RIFLEMEN.

COMPRISING

THE SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON AND COMPANY, RULES FOR SKIRMISHING, SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION, REGIMENTAL EVOLUTIONS AND A CONDENSED SYSTEM OF CAMP AND GARRISON REGULATIONS.

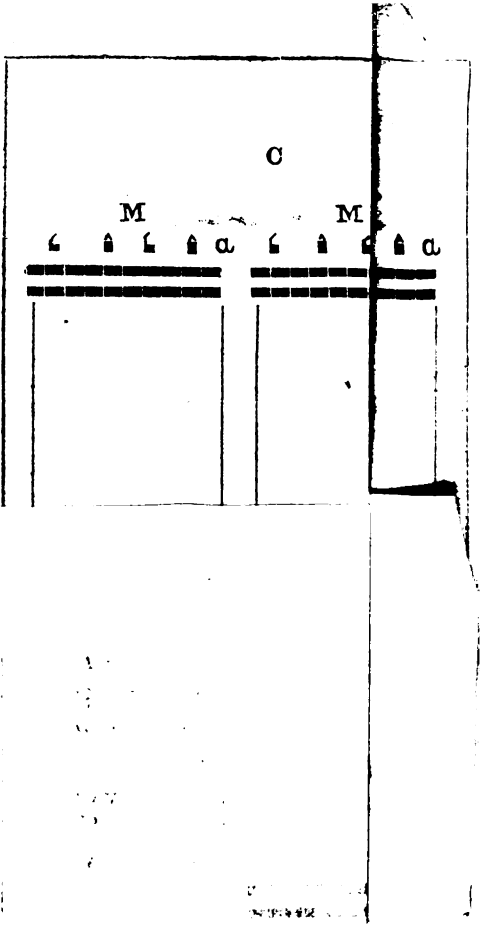
PREPARED EXPRESSLY FOR THE USE OF THE MILITIA OF THE TERRITORY OF UTAH,

BY

COLONEL WM. B. PACE,
NAUVOO LEGION.

GREAT SALT LAKE CITY:
DESERET NEWS PRINT.
1865.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

RIFLE

AND

LIGHT INFANTRY TACTICS;

FOR

THE EXERCISE AND MANEUVERS

OF

TROOPS WHEN ACTING AS LIGHT INFANTRY OR RIFLEMEN.

COMPRISING

THE SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON AND COMPANY, RULES FOR SKIRMISHING, SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION, REGIMENTAL EVOLUTIONS AND A CONDENSED SYSTEM OF CAMP AND GARRISON REGULATIONS.

PREPARED EXPRESSLY FOR THE USE OF THE MILITIA OF THE TERRITORY OF UTAH,

BY

COLONEL WM. B. PACE,
NAUVOO LEGION.

GREAT SALT LAKE CITY:
DESERET NEWS PRINT.
1865.

Digitized by Google

War 1203.65.2
~~US 34530.5~~

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

JUL 1

CHARLES ELLIOTT PERKINS
MEMORIAL COLLECTION

Digitized by Google

ADJUTANT GENERAL'S OFFICE, NAUVOO LEGION,
G. S. L. CITY, U.T., March 24th, 1865.

The Adjutant General's Department have carefully examined the following system of RIFLE AND LIGHT INFANTRY TACTICS, compiled by Colonel Wm. B. Pace, and recommend the same for general use by the Militia of the Territory.

H. B. CLAWSON,
Adjutant-General, Nauvoo Legion.

T. W. ELLERBECK,
Chief of Ordnance and Ass't. Adjutant-Gen., N.L.

R. T. BURTON,
Col. 1st Cav., and Ass't. Adjutant-Gen., N.L.

D. J. ROSS,
Col. 3d Infantry, and Ass't. Adjutant-Gen., N.L.

Digitized by Google

ERRATA:

Page 21, paragraph 126, read 1. *Platoon.* 2. *Ready.* 3. *Aim.* 4. *Fire.* 5. *Load.*
Page 106, paragraph 78, third line, for *ten* read *six* and in seventh line for *eight* read *four.*
Page 106, paragraph 79, third line, for *ten* read *six.*
Page 107, paragraph 81, seventh line, for *ten* read *six.*
Page 107, paragraph 91, sixth line, for *ten* read *six.*
Page 116, paragraph 160, third line, for *adjutant* read *lieutenant-colonel.*
Page 117, first line, for *adjutant* read *lieutenant-colonel.*
Page 119, paragraph 190, third line, for "186" read "184."
Page 134, paragraph 306, eighth line, for "308" read "305."
Page 141, paragraph 367, fifth line for *guide* read *marker.*
Page 144, paragraph 389, third line, for *adjutant* read *lieutenant-colonel.*
Page 153, paragraph 459, second line, for *sergeant* read *surgeon.*
Page 155, paragraph 3, second line, after the word commission, read "and when of the same grade, corps and date of commission then"
Page 156, paragraph 9, fourth line, for *regulations* read *resignations.*
Page 157, paragraph 29, fifth line, for *lieutenant-colonel* read *aide-de-camp.*

Digitized by Google

INDEX.

BASIS OF INSTRUCTION.

	PAGE
Formation of the regiment	1
Post of officers in line	1
Post of officers in line of battle and in column	2
Guides and markers	8
Instruction of the regiment	3
Instruction of officers—commands	4
Definition of terms of formation	4

SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON.

First principles	6
Principle of the direct step	7
Principles of the double quick step	9
Manual of arms	11
The direct fire	21
Oblique firing—to fire by file	22
Cease firing—To fire and load, kneeling	23
To fire and load, lying	24
Inspection of arms	25
To mark time	26
To change step—To march backwards—Alignments	27
To march to the front—The oblique march	29
To face about in marching	30
To march by the flank	31
Wheelings	33
Turning—Wheeling and changing direction in double quick time	35
To break by sections to the left and form left into line	36
To form on right into line—Front into line, and right four deep	37

Digitized by Google

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

General principles—To form by platoon 39
Formation of the company 40
Roll call 41
To fire by company...To fire by file 42
To fire by rank—To fire by the rear rank 43
To advance in line 44
To mark time—To march in double quick time 46
To march in retreat 46
To march by a flank 47
To change direction by file 48
To march by a flank and form on right or left into line 48
To march by a flank and form by company or platoon into line 49
Marching in column by platoon, to march by a flank in same direction 50
To break from a halt into column by platoons 50
To march in column 51
Remarks on the march in column 52
To change direction 53
To halt the column 54
Diminishing and increasing of a column 57
To march the column in route 58
Being in column by platoons to form right or left into line 60
To stack arms and break ranks 61

INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

General principles 62
Deployments 63
To deploy forward 63
To deploy by a flank 66
To extend intervals 67
To close intervals 68
To relieve a company of skirmishers 68
To advance and retreat in line 68
To march by a flank 70
The firings 70
To fire marching 71
The rally by groups and guard against cavalry 73
The rally by platoons on reserve and by company 74
Reduce circle 75
Rally on regiment 75
The assembly 76
To deploy a regiment as skirmishers 76
To rally the regiment 79
Manual of the sabre 81
Color salute 83
Instruction for chief of music 85

Digitized by Google

SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

Manner of forming line..... 84
Fire by company..... 87
To pass from line into column..... 88
To break by the right or left of companies, rear into column..... 90
To advance or retire by the right or left of companies..... 91
To ploy the battalion into close column by companies..... 92
To march in column at full distance..... 93
To change direction in column at full distance..... 94
To change direction in column at half distance..... 95
To deploy column at half distance..... 96

REGIMENTAL EVOLUTIONS.

Manner of forming line..... 97
The fire by company, by regiment, by file and by rank..... 101
To fire by rear rank..... 102
Movements from line..... 102
To break to the rear into column..... 104
To advance or retire by the right or left of companies..... 105
To ploy the regiment into column in mass..... 105
To march in column at full distance..... 110
Column in route..... 113
Remarks on the column in route..... 114
To change direction at full distance..... 115
To close the column to half distance..... 117
To close the column on tenth company..... 118
To march in column at half distance or closed in mass..... 120
To change direction at half distance or closed in mass..... 120
To change direction from a halt..... 121
Being closed to half distance or in mass, to take distance..... 122
To take distance on rear company..... 123
To take distance on the head of column..... 124
To form battalions from columns in mass..... 125
To form battalions from column at full distance..... 127
To pass from a column at full distance into line..... 128
To pass from a column at full distance on right into line..... 129
To form forward into line..... 131
To form line faced to the rear..... 135
To form line by two movements..... 136
To form left into line from column at half distance 137

Digitized by Google

To deploy column closed in mass 138
To advance in line 142
To halt the regiment and align it 143
To march in retreat in line 144
To halt the regiment in retreat and face it to the front 145
Passage of obstacles 146
To change front forward 147
To ploy into close column doubled on the centre 148
To deploy the double column 149
To form from double column on right into line 150
Dispositions against cavalry to form square 150
To form oblique squares 153
The rally 154

REGULATIONS.

Procedure of corps 154
Rank and command 155
Succession in command 155
Resignation of officers 156
Hours of service and roll calls 156
Morning reports—Forms of parade 157
Dress parades 158
Guard mounting 160
Officers of the day and guard 164
Guards, their use and duty 164
Review 168
Form of guard report 168
List of guard, &c 169
List of prisoners 170
Inspection 173
Escorts of honor 174
Manner of issuing orders 175
Military districts 175
District quartermaster 176
Commissaries of subsistence 177
Calling the militia into service 177
Arrests and confinements 178
Courts martial 179
Manner of sitting at a court martial 180
Honors to be paid by the troops 182
Salutes 184
Funeral honors 184
Order of encampment for infantry 185
Muster rolls 186
Morning report 188
Muster roll of Company 189
Muster roll of battalion 190
Regimental return 191
Provision return 192

Digitized by Google

RIFLE AND LIGHT INFANTRY TACTICS.

BASIS OF INSTRUCTIONS.

Composition and formation of a Regiment in line, and in line of Battle.

1. A regiment is composed of five battalions, and will be distinguished by the denomination of *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth* and *fifth* battalions, formed on the same line, and in the order of their numbers, with an interval between each of four paces.

2. A regiment with a less number of battalions will observe the same rule.

3. A battalion is composed of two companies, and will be numbered from right to left, as *first* and *second* companies in each battalion.

4. A company is composed of five platoons, numbered from right to left. Companies in regiments will be lettered by the regimental commandant as, A. B. C. D., etc., which letters will be preserved irrespective of what particular place they may occupy when in line.

5. A platoon is composed of twelve men (one 2d lieutenant, one sergeant and ten privates).

6. The centre platoon of the right centre company will be constituted the color guard, and numbers three and four of the front rank of this platoon, the color bearers of the regiment; that company, with all on its right, will be designated the right wing, and the companies on its left, the left wing of the regiment.

7. In all exercises or maneuvers every regiment or part of a regiment, composed of two or more battalions, will be designated as a regiment.

8. The formation of the regiment is in two ranks, with a distance between the ranks of sixteen inches, measured from the breasts of the rear rank men to the backs of the front rank men.

Post of Officers in Line.

9. The 2d lieutenants in the front rank, on the right of their respective platoons, their sergeants covering them; the men in each platoon will be numbered from right to left, including officers and sergeants.

Digitized by Google

10. The captain three paces in front of the right centre of his company; the 1st lieutenant three paces in front of the left centre of the company.

11. The majors of each battalion, six paces in front of the centre of their respective battalions; battalion adjutants three paces in front of the right guide of [illegible] battalion.

12. The colonel will take post twenty-five paces in front of the centre of the regiment; the lieutenant colonel twelve paces in front of the centre of the right wing; the aid-de-camp twelve paces in front of the centre of the left wing; the surgeon and other staff officers thirty paces in rear of the centre of the regiment.

13. The music of the regiment will be drawn up in three ranks, and posted fifteen paces in rear of the centre platoon of right centre company, its chief three paces in front of the centre of the music.

Post of Officers in line of Battle.

14. In passing from the order *in line*, to the order in *line of battle*, the officers whose positions are in front, will pass through the intervals to the rear, opposite to their places in front, and at the same distance from the line.

Post of Officers in Column right in Front.

15. The colonel twelve paces to the left, opposite the centre of the regiment; the lieutenant colonel six paces to the left and opposite the centre of the right wing; the aid-de-camp six paces to the left and opposite the centre of the left wing; the surgeon and other staff officers fifteen paces to the right and opposite the centre of the regiment. In *active service*, or on *general parades*, the colonel, lieutenant colonel and aid-de-camp will be mounted.

16. In column by battalion, battalion and company officers as in line.

17. In column by companies, the major will be three paces to the left, opposite the centre of his battalions; the battalion adjutant two paces to the right and abreast with the front rank of leading company of his respective battalion. Company officers as in line.

18. In column by platoon, the colonel, lieutenant colonel, aid-de-camp, surgeon and battalion officers as prescribed in Nos. 15 and 17; the captains two paces to the left, abreast with the right centre of their companies; the 1st lieutenants two paces to the left, abreast with the left centre of their companies.

19. The music, when the regiment is in column, either by platoon, company or battalion, will habitu-

Digitized by Google

ally hold themselves about six paces to the right, and opposite the centre platoon of the right centre company.

20. In a column left in front, the officers and music will hold themselves upon the same flank, and at the prescribed distance just laid down for a column right in front.

Company Guides.

21. The lieutenant of the right platoon will be designated the right guide of the company, and a serjeant, or well instructed man will be selected by the captain, and posted on the extreme left of the front rank, who will, for the time being, be denominated left guide.

Battalion Guides.

22. The lieutenant, or right guide of the right company, will be denominated the right guide of the battalion, and the left guide of the second or left company, the left guide of the battalion.

Markers.

23. In breaking into column from line, or in the various formations from column into line, the first lieutenants and battalion adjutants will mark the points where the right or left of their companies or battalions will rest, when in column or in line.

Instruction of the Regiment.

24. Every commanding officer is responsible for the instruction of his command, and will exact a similar responsibility from subordinate officers; he will assemble the officers together for theoretical and practical instruction as often as the exigencies of the case may require, and will vigilantly superintend their instruction in person.

25. Majors will be responsible for the dicipline of their battalions and in all separate battalion exercises should be their instrutor; but when practicable, such exercises will be under the observance of the colonel or a field officer.

26. Captains will, in like manner, be responsible for the instruction of their respective companies; and on all individual company musters should be their instructor, under the observance of the major or battalion adjutant.

27. In the school of the platoon, the chief of platoon will be the instructor, under the direction of the captain or first lieutenant.

28. Platoon drill being the basis of instruction of companies, and on which the success of the battalion and regiment depends, the greatest care will be taken

Digitized by Google

that the men are well established in this school, before passing them into the school of the company.

29. Instructors will explain in a clear and precise manner the movements to be executed, always useing the same words to explain the same principles; they will also often join example to precept, and keep up the attention of the men by an animated tone, passing rapidly from one movement to another, when the last command has been satisfactorily executed.

Instruction of Officers.

30. The instruction of officers cannot be perfected only by joining theory to practice; and every officer from the colonel to the second lieutenant should be able to command according to his rank, and to explain and execute, or cause to be executed, all that is prescribed in this system of drill, together with a thorough knowledge of the bugle signals, and regulations prescribing their duties in camp and garrison.

Selection and Instruction of 2d Lieutenants and Sergeants.

31. The discipline and efficiency of a company materially depends upon the character and intelligence of its second lieutenants and sergeants; their instruction will include the "School of the platoon," "School of the company," "Rules for skirmishing," all the details of service and such regulations as prescribe their duty in camp or garrison.

Commands.

32. There are three kinds of commands, viz.:—the command of *caution*, which is attention; the *preparatory command*, which indicates the movement to be executed, and the command of *execution*, such as *march* or *halt*, or in the manual of arms that part of the command which causes an execution.

33. The tone of command should be animated, distinct and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men under instruction.

34. The command of *attention* will be pronounced at the top of the voice, dwelling upon the last syllable, that of execution in a tone firm and brief.

35. The commands of caution and the preparatory commands will be herein distinguished by *italics;* those of execution by SMALL CAPITALS.

Definition of Certain Terms of Formation and Maneuver.

36. *A Rank*—Is any number of men, side by side, in line.

Digitized by Google

37. *A File*—Is composed of two men, one behind the other.

38. *File-leader*—Is a man of the front rank of a platoon or company, relatively to the one who is behind him in the rear rank.

39. *Front*—Is the direction perpendicular to the alignment of a corps, and before it, either in column or in line.

40. *Wings*—Are the two grand divisions into which any body of men may be divided when in line.

41. *Flank*—Is the right or left extremity of a line or column.

42. *Interval*—Is the space between two battalions or regiments when in line, and groups when skirmishing; the interval between battalions when in line will be four paces, between regiments twelve places, and between groups of skirmishers habitually twenty paces.

43. *Distance*—Is the space from one division to another in column, or between the ranks of a company, either in line or column.

44. *Depth*—Is the space included between the head and the rear of a column.

45. *Alignment*—Is the placing men in the same line, elbow to elbow with each other.

46. *Column*—Is a line broken into several parts, each part following exactly behind the other. There are four kinds of column; *column in route, column with distance, column at half distance and column in mass.*

47. *Column in Route*—Is formed of men by section or platoon for convenience in marching from one post or encampment to another.

48. *Column with Distance*—Is formed of platoons, companys or battalions, having between them the distance necessary to form line in every way.

49. *Column at Half Distance*—Is a column closed to a distance of one half its front.

50. *Column in Mass*—Is a column closed up, until the guides of each battalion or company, are only separated by four paces.

51. *Fixed Points or Points of Direction*—Serve to point out the direction in which a corps in line or in column is to march, or to mark the right or left of a line.

52. *Intermediate Points*—Are those taken between the fixed points and the guide, and are used to preserve the desired direction during the march.

53. *Guide of the Column*—Is the man on one of the flanks of the front rank of a column, who is charged with the direction. The guide is habitually left when the right is in front, and right when the left is in front.

54. *Wheel*—Is a circular movement; when a platoon

Digitized by Google

or company makes a wheel it turns upon one of its flanks; each of the men composing it describes a circle larger in proportion to his distance from the centre point or pivot.

55. *About Face*—Is the half of a circle; *right* or *left face*, is the fourth part of a circle, and *right half* or *left half face* is the eighth part of a circle.

56. *Pivot*—Is the front rank man of the flank on which the wheel is made; there are two kinds of pivots, fixed and moveable: the pivot is fixed when he turns upon himself, and moveable when he describes a small arc of a circle.

57. *Ployments*—Is the movement by which a regiment forms from line into column.

58. *Deployments*—Is the movement by which a regiment forms from column into line.

59 *The March by a Flank*—Is that by which ground is gained to the right or left after facing.

60. *The Direct March*—Is that which a company executes by moving off perpendicularly to its alignment.

61. *Skirmishers*—Are men dispersed in front, in rear, or on the flanks of a corps to cover its movement or its position.

62. *Obstacle*—Is anything in the nature of the ground which obliges a troop in line to ploy a part of its front.

63. *A Defile*—Is a passage which compels a line to ploy into column, or a column to diminish its front.

64. *Echelon*—Is a line broken into several parts, moving direct to the front or rear, each part habitually holding itself at a distance equal to its front in rear of the sub-division that preceded it, and marching opposite its place in line.

65. *Oblique Echelon*—Is a line broken into several parts by wheel from line or column less than a quarter circle, so as to be oblique to the former front.

66. *Inversion*—Is a line formed by companys or battalions not in their proper order, when the right is to the left and the left to the right.

SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON.

First Principles.

1. In this the first part which includes the *first Position*, the *facings*, the march in *common*, *quick* and *double quick time*, the men will be without arms.

2. The instructor will cause the men to form in one rank at nearly one pace apart and faced to the front; then placing himself five or six paces in front of their centre, and facing to them will himself execute the movements which he commands so as to join example

Digitized by Google

to precept and never require a movement to be executed until he has given an exact explanation of it.

First Position.

3. Heels on a line, and as close together as the conformation of the man will permit, the feet turned out equally and forming with each other something less than a right angle, knees straight without stiffness; the body erect on the hips, the upper part inclining a little forward; the shoulders square and falling equally; arms hanging naturally, elbows near the body, the palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons, the face well to the front, the chin a little drawn in without constraint, and the eyes striking the ground at the distance of fifteen paces.

4. The instructor having established the platoon in the position of the soldier without arms will now teach them the turning of the head and eyes. He will command:

1. *Eyes*—RIGHT. 2. FRONT.

5. At the word right the men will turn their heads gently to the right, so as to bring the inner corner of the left eye in a line with the centre of the body, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in the same rank.

6. At the second command the head will resume its direct position to the front.

7. The movement of *eyes*—LEFT will be executed by inverse means.

8. The instructor will take particular care that the movement of the head does not derange the squarness of the shoulders, which will happen if the movements of the former be too sudden.

9. When the instructor shall wish the platoon to pass from the state of attention to that of ease, he will command:

Platoon—REST.

10. At the word rest, the men will carry the right foot six inches in rear of the left heel, cross the hands in front, the back of the hand outward, the right hand uppermost, and stand at ease.

11. To resume the habitual position the instructor will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. PLATOON.

12. At the first word the men will fix their attention; at the second they will resume the prescribed position and steadiness.

Digitized by Google

Facings.

13. Facing to the right and left will be executed in one time or pause. The instructor will command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Right (or left)* FACE.

14. At the second command raise the right foot slightly, turn on the left heel, raising a little the left toe, and face to the right (or left) at the same time bring the right heel by the side of the left, and on the same line, so that this new line of heels shall be exactly at right angles with their former line.

15. The full face to the rear (or front) will be executed in two times, or pauses. The instructor will command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. *About*—FACE.

16. (First time) at the word about, the men will turn on the left heel, bring the left toe to the front, carry the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to, and full three inches from the left heel, the feet square to each other.

17. (Second time) at the word *face*, the men will turn on both heels, raise the toes a little, extend the hams and face to the rear, bringing at the same time the right heel by the side of the left.

Principles of the Direct Step.

18. The length of the direct step, or pace, in common time will be twenty-eight inches, reckoning from heel to heel, and in swiftness at the rate of ninety steps in a minute.

19. The instructor seeing the men confirmed in their position will explain to them the principles of this step—placing himself eight or ten paces from, and facing to the platoon. He will himself execute slowly the step in the way of illustration, and then command:

1. *Platoon, Forward.* 2. *Common Time.* 3. MARCH.

20. At the first command, the men will throw the weight of the body on the right leg, without bending the left knee.

21. At the third command they will step off smartly, (but without a jerk) with the left foot, carry it straight forward (the body moving at the same time) the sole near the ground the thighs extended, the toes pointed a little downward and slightly turned out, plant the foot flat without shock twenty-eight inches from the right. Next advance the right foot, and plant it as above, the heel twenty-eight inches from the heel

Digitized by Google

of the left foot, and thus continue to march without turning the shoulders, and preserving always the face direct to the front.

22. To arrest the march the instructor will command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. HALT.

23. At the second command, which will be given at the instant, when either foot is coming to the ground stop short on the foot, then forward and bring up the other by the side of it without shock.

24. The instructor will indicate to the men from time to time, the cadence of the step, by giving the command *one, two,* observing the cadence of ninety steps a minute.

25. Common time will be employed only in the first lessons of the school of the platoon. As soon as the men have acquired steadiness, and have become established in the principles of shoulder arms, and in the mechanism, length and swiftness of the step in common time, they will be practised only in quick time, double quick time, and the run.

26. The principles of the step in quick time are the same as for common time, but its swiftness will be at the rate of one hundred and ten steps per minute.

27. The instructor wishing the platoon to march in quick time, will command:

1. *Platoon, forward.* 2. MARCH.

28. At the second command, the men will step off with the left foot, in quick time, planting the feet flat as indicated in No. 21.

Principles of the Double Quick Step.

29. The length of the double quick step is thirty-three inches, and its swiftness at the rate of one hundred and sixty-five steps per minute.

30. The instructor wishing to teach the men the principle and mechanism of the double quick step, will command:

1. *Double quick step.* 2. MARCH.

31. At the first command, the men will raise their hands to a level with their hips, the hands closed, the nails toward the body, the elbows to the rear and close to the body without constraint.

32. At the second command, they will raise to the front the left leg bent, giving the knee the greatest elevation, the part of the leg between the knee and instep vertical the toe depressed and inclining the upper part of the body forward, they will then replace

Digitized by Google

the foot in its former position, and with the right execute what has just been prescribed for the left, this alternate movement of the legs will be continued until the command:

HALT.

33. At this command the men will bring the foot that is raised by the side of the other, and drop at the same time the hands, resuming the first position.

34. The men being sufficiently established in the principles of this step, the instructor will command:

1. *Platoon, Forward.* 2. *Double Quick,* 3. MARCH.

35. At the first command the man will throw the weight of the body on the right leg.

36. At the second command, they will place their arms as indicated in No. 31.

37. At the third command, they will carry forward the left foot, the leg slightly bent, the knee somewhat raised—will plant their left feet, the toe first, thirty-three inches from the right, and with the right feet execute what has just been prescribed for the left. This alternate movement of the legs will take place by throwing the weight of the body forward on the foot that is planted and by allowing a natural oscillating motion to the arms.

Fig. 1.

38. The double quick step may be executed with different degrees of swiftness. Under urgent circumstances the cadence of this step may be increased to one hundred and eighty steps per minute.

39. The men should be exercised in running, the principles are the same as for the double quick steps. The only difference consisting in a greater degree of swiftness.

40. The instructor will not pass the men into the *manual of arms* until they are well established in the position of the body, and in the manner of marching the different steps.

41. He will then form the men in single rank, elbow to elbow, and instruct them in the position of shoulder arms, as follows:

42. (*Fig.* 1.) The piece in the right

Digitized by Google

hand, the barrel to the rear, the thumb above and forefinger under the guard, the other fingers closed and embracing the swell of the stock just below the hammer, the arm nearly straight, the left hand by the side.

43. The instructor before passing to the next lesson will cause to be repeated the movements of *eyes right*, *left* and *front*, and the *facings*.

Manual of Arms.

44. The manual of arms will be taught first in one rank elbow, to elbow, and afterwards in two ranks.

45. Each command will be executed in one *time* or *pause*, but this time will be divided into motions, the better to make known the mechanism.

46. The manual of arms will be taught in the following progression: the instructor will command:

Slope—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

Fig. 2.

47. Bring the piece (by bending the right arm) across the body, the barrel resting in the joint of the right elbow, and place at the same time the left hand over the right.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

48. Bring the piece quickly to the right side into the position of shoulder arms, and drop the left hand by the side.

Present—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

49. (*Fig.* 2.) (1st) Bring the piece erect before the centre of the body, the rammer to the front, seize it at the same time with the left hand, between the lower band and guide sight, the thumb extended on the stock and the forearm resting against the body.

50. (2d) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand below and against the guard, the fingers joined and extended downward, lower the piece so as to bring the left hand and elbow horizontal.

Digitized by Google

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

51. (1st) Bring the piece to the right shoulder, at the same time change the position of the right hands so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and forefinger, slip up the left hand to the hight of the shoulder, the fingers joined and extended.

52. (2d) Drop the left hand by the side.

Secure—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

Fig. 3.

53. (*Fig.* 3) (1st) Bring the piece with the right hand perpendicular to the front, the barrel to the rear, seize it at the same time with the left hand at the lower band, raise this hand as high as the chin, and grasp the small of the stock with the right hand.

54. (2d) Turn the piece with both hands, the barrel to the front, and place it opposite the left shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left hand at the lower band, the thumb extended on the rammer, the piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the left elbow on the lock plate and the right hand at the small of the stock.

55. (3d) Pass the piece under the left arm, drawing the left elbow well back, the thumb on the rammer, the little finger resting against the left hip, drop at the same time the right hand by the side.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

56. (1st) Raise the piece with the left hand, seize it with the right hand at the small of the stock, the piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left elbow on the lock plate.

57. (2d) Carry the piece to the right shoulder with both hands, change the grasp of the right hand as in shoulder arms, and slip up the left to the hight of the shoulder, the fingers extended.

58. (3d) Drop the left hand by the side.

Digitized by Google

59. The piece being at a secure, the instructor will cause the men to change hands by the command:

Right, Secure—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

60. (1st) Grasp the piece with the right hand at the lower band and raise it vertical, at the same time seize it with the left at the small of the stock.

61. (2d) With both hands carry the piece to the right side, and reverse it under the right arm, the right thumb on the rammer, and drop the left hand by the side.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

62. (1st) Raise the piece perpendicular with the right hand, and grasp it with the left above the lower band, turn the barrel to the rear and embrace the guard with the right hand as in shoulder arms.

63. (2d) Drop the left hand by the side.

Fig. 4.

Right shoulder shift—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

64. (*Fig.* 4.) (1st) Grasp the piece with the left hand at the lower band and raise it as high as the shoulder, turning the barrel to the right, and place the right hand under the butt, the back of the hand down.

65. (2d) Quit the piece with the left hand, raise and place it on the shoulder with the right hand until the guard touches the breast, the lock plate upwards.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

66. (1st) Bring down the piece to the full extent of the right arm, and seize it with the left hand at the lower band.

67. (2d) Embrace the guard with the right hand as in shoulder arms and drop the left by the side.

68. The piece being at *right shoulder shift arms* the instructor will

Digitized by Google

cause the men to execute *left shoulder shift arms* by the command:

Left shoulder shift—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

69. (1st) Bring up the left hand and grasp the piece under the butt, the fingers downwards, slipping up the right hand and grasp the small of the stock.

70. (2d) With both hands place the piece on the left shoulder, the lock down, and drop the right hand.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

71. (1st) Bring down the piece by extending the left arm, seize it with the right hand at the small of the stock, and at the same time with the left at the lower band, the piece vertical.

72. (2d) With both hands carry the piece to the right shoulder, embrace the guard as in shoulder arms and drop the left hand.

Trail—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

73. (1st) With the left hand seize the piece at the hight of the shoulder, lower the piece and grasp it with the right between the lock and guide sight, the barrel perpendicular.

74. (2d) Incline the muzzle forward and drop the left hand by the side.

Left—TRAIL.

One time and one motion.

75. Elevate the muzzle and pass the piece into the left hand, grasping it near the guide sight, carry the piece to the left side and drop the right hand.

76. To resume the former trail the instructor commands: *Right*—TRAIL, which is executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

77. (1st) Raise the piece vertically with the right hand to the hight of the breast, and opposite to the shoulder, the elbow close to the body, seize it with the left hand below the right, and drop quickly the right hand and grasp the piece as in shoulder arms.

78. (2d) Drop the left hand by the side.

79. The men being at *left trail*, to shoulder arms the instructor commands:

Digitized by Google

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

80. (1st) With the left hand carry the piece perpendicular to the right shoulder and embrace the guard with the right hand, slip up the left to the hight of the shoulder.

81. (2d) Drop the left hand by the side.

Order—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

Fig. 5.

82. (*Fig.* 5.) (1st) Seize the piece with the left hand at the hight of the shoulder, loosen the grasp of the right hand, lower the piece and re-seize it with the right hand near the lower band, the barrel between the thumb and forefinger in rear of the barrel, the right hand supported against the hip, the butt about four inches from the ground.

83. (2d) Let the piece slip through the right hand to the ground, drop the left hand and take position about to be described.

Position of order arms.

84. The hand low, the barrel between the thumb and forefinger, the other fingers extended and joined, the rammer in front, the muzzle about two inches in advance of the left shoulder, the toe (or beak) of the butt against and in line with the toe of the right foot.

85. The men being at order arms, and the instructor wishing to give repose, will command:

Platoon—REST.

86. At the command *rest*, turn the piece on the heel of the butt, the barrel to the left, the muzzle in front of the centre of the body, seize the piece with the left hand just above, and slip up the right to the upper band, carry at the same time the right foot six inches to the rear, the left knee slightly bent.

1. *Attention* 2. PLATOON.

87. At the second command the men will resume the position of *order arms*.

Digitized by Google

Ground—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

88. (1st) Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel to the left, advance the left foot about twenty inches, bend the body and the left knee, and lay the piece on the ground.

89. (2d) Raise up, bring the heels together and drop the hands.

Raise—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

90. (1st) Advance the left foot, bend the body and left knee and raise the piece with the right hand.

91. (2d) Retake the position of *order arms*.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

Fig. 6.

92. (1st) Raise the piece vertically with the right hand to the hight of the right breast and opposite the right shoulder, the elbow close to the body, seize the piece quickly with the left hand just below the right and drop the hand to embrace the guard, press the piece against the shoulder with the left hand.

93. (2d) Drop the left hand.

Arms—PORT.

One time and one motion.

94. (*Fig.* 6) Throw the piece diagonally across the body, the lock to the front, seize it smartly at the same time with both hands, the right at the small of the stock, the left at the lower band, the two thumbs pointing towards the muzzle, the barrel sloping upwards and crossing opposite the point of the left shoulder, the palm of the right hand above, and the left hand under, the nails towards the body, the elbows well closed.

Digitized by Google

Shoulder—ARMS,
One time and one motion.

95. Bring up the piece smartly, retake the position of shoulder arms, and drop the left hand.

Guard against cavalry—GUARD,
On time and two motions.

Fig. 7.

96. (*Fig.* 7) (1st) Make a half pace to the right turning on both heels, the feet square to each other, at the same time raise the piece slightly with the right hand, and seize it with the left at the tail band.

97. (2d) carry the right foot twenty inches to the rear, the right heel on the prolongation of the left, the knees slightly bent, the weight of the body resting on both legs, lower the piece with both hands, the barrel upwards, seize the piece at the same time at the small of the stock, with the right hand, supported against the hip, the left elbow against the body, the bayonet at the hight of the eye.

Shoulder—ARMS.
One time and two motions.

98. (1st) Bring up the piece with the left hand and retake the position of shoulder arms, at the same time bring the right heel by the side of the left and face to the front.

Digitized by Google

99. (2d) Drop the left hand.

Load in nine times.

1. LOAD.

100. With the left hand seize the piece at the right shoulder and place the butt on the ground by the left side, slipping the hand up to the upper band, at the same time quit the hold with the right hand and carry it to the cartridge box.

2. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.

Fig. 8.

101. (*Fig.* 8.) Seize a cartridge with the thumb and next two fingers and place it between the teeth.

3. *Tear*—CARTRIDGE.

102. Tear the paper down to the powder, hold the cartridge upright and place it in front of and near the muzzle, the back of the hand to the front.

4. *Charge*—CARTRIDGE.

103. Empty the powder into the barrel, disengage the ball from the paper with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand and insert it in the bore, seize the head of the rammer with the thumb and first finger of the right hand, the fingers closed, the elbows down.

5. *Draw*—RAMMER.

One time and two motions.

104. (1st) Half draw the rammer by extending the right arm, steady it in this position with the thumb of the left hand, reseize it with the right near the muzzle, the little finger uppermost, the nails to the front.

105. (2d) Clear the rammer from the pipes by again extending the arm, turn the rammer, the little end passing near the left shoulder and place the head on the ball, the back of the hand to the front.

6. *Ram*—CARTRIDGE.

106. Insert the rammer with both hands, the right hand uppermost, the back of the hands to the front, press the ball home and reseize the piece with the left hand at the upper band.

Digitized by Google

7. *Return*—RAMMER.

One time and two motions.

107. (1st) Draw the rammer half out and steady it in this position with the left thumb, reseize it as indicated in No. 104.

108. (2d) Clear the rammer from the bore by extending the right arm, turn the rammer and force it in the tubes, pressing it down by placing the little finger of the right hand on the head, the hand closed, Slip at the same time the left hand down the barrel to the extent of the arm.

8. PRIME.

One time and two motions.

109. (1st) Raise the piece with the left hand to the hight of the chin, and seize it with the right at the small of the stock, half-face to the right and place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, the left toe square to the front, bring the piece to the right side, the butt below the right forearm, the small of the stock against the body and about two inches below the right breast, slip down the left hand to the lower band, the elbow against the body, the muzzle at the hight of the eye.

Fig. 9.

110. (2d) Half cock with the thumb of the right hand, remove the old cap, take a cap from the pouch and place it upon the tube, let the hammer down on the tube with the thumb and forefinger of this hand and seize the small of the stock.

9. *Shoulder*—ARMS.

111. Bring the piece up quickly, retake the position of shoulder arms, and drop the left hand.

Digitized by Google

READY.

One time and two motions.

112. (*Fig.* 9) (1st) Retake the position of first motion of *prime*.

113. (2d) Raise the hammer with the thumb of the right hand and seize the small of the stock.

AIM.

Fig. 10.

114. (*Fig.* 10) Raise the piece with both hands, press the butt against the right shoulder, incline the head upon the butt so that the right eye may observe the notch in the guide sight and the object aimed at, the right thumb extended on the stock, the forefinger on the trigger

115. The rear rank at the command *aim*, will each carry the right foot about eight inches to the right towards the left heel of the man next on his right.

116. After firing the men will remain in that position until the command:

LOAD.

117. Bring down the piece with both hands, face to the front, and take the position indicated in No. 100.

118. The instructor will cause the loading to be continued by the command, and means indicated in No. 109 and following.

119. If after loading the instructor should wish to continue the fire, he will give the command *ready*, after that of prime, when the man will execute the second motion of ready; if on the contrary he should wish to cease firing, he will command:

Digitized by Google

Shoulder—ARMS.

120. At this command throw up the piece, retake the position of shoulder arms, and drop the left hand.

121. When at the position of aim, should the instructor wish to accustom the men to wait for the word *fire*, he will command.

Recover—ARMS.

122. At this command, throw up the muzzle and retake the position of *ready*, except that the muzzle will be elevated, the barrel nearly vertical, the left hand against the right breast.

123. The men being in the position of recover arms, should the instructor wish to bring them to a shoulder, he will command:

Shoulder—ARMS.

124. At this command place the right thumb on the hammer and the forefinger on the trigger, let the hammer down on the tube and take the position of shoulder arms.

Firings.

125. The firings are either direct or oblique and will be executed as follows:

The direct Fire.

126. The instructor will give the following commands:

1. *Platoon*, 2. *Aim*, 3. *Fire*, 4. *Load.*

127. These commands will all be executed as has been prescribed in the *manual of arms*. At the second command the men will come to the position of *ready*, as heretofore explained. At the third they will aim according to the rank in which he may find himself placed, the rear rank inclining forward the upper part of the body, in order that their pieces may reach as much beyond the front rank as possible.

128. At the fifth command, they will load their pieces, and return to the position of *ready*.

129. The instructor will recommence the firings by the commands:

1. *Platoon*. 2. *Ready*. 3. *Aim*. 4. *Fire*. 5. *Load.*

130. To cease firing, the instructor will command:

Cease Firing.

131. At this command, the men will cease firing, load their pieces if unloaded, and bring them to a shoulder.

Digitized by Google

Oblique Firings.

132. The oblique firings will be executed to the right and left, and by the same commands as the direct fire, with this difference, the word *aim* will always be preceded by the caution of *right* (*or left*) oblique.

Position of the two ranks in the oblique fire to the right.

133. At the command *ready* both ranks will execute what has been prescribed for the direct fire.

134. At the caution *right oblique*, the two ranks will throw back the right shoulder and look steadily at the object to be hit.

135. At the command *aim*, each front rank man will aim to the right without deranging the feet, each rear rank man will advance his left foot about eight inches towards the right heel of the man next on the left of his file leader, and aim through the interval to the right of his file leader, inclining the upper part of the body forward and bending the left knee.

Position of the two ranks in the oblique fire to the left.

136. At the caution *left oblique*, both ranks will throw back the left shoulder, and look steadily to the left.

137. At the command *aim*, the front rank men will aim to the left without deranging the feet, each rear rank man will advance the right foot about eight inches towards the left heel of the man next on the right of his file leader, and aim through the interval to the left of his file leader.

138. In both cases at the command *load*, the men of each rank will come to the position of *load* as prescribed in the direct fire, the rear rank men bringing back the foot, which is to the front by the side of the other, and load as if isolated.

To fire by file.

139. The fire by file will be executed by the two ranks, the files of each will fire successively, and without regulating on each other, except for the first fire. The instructor will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Platoon.* 3. *Ready.* 4. *Commence firing.*

140. At the third command both ranks will take the position prescribed in the direct fire.

141. At the fourth, the file on the right will aim and fire, the rear rank man in aiming will take the position prescribed in No. 115.

142. The second file will aim at the instant the first brings down their pieces to reload, and will conform

Digitized by Google

to what has been prescribed for the first file, and so on from right to left.

143. After the first fire the front and rear rank men will not be required to fire at the same time.

144. Each man after loading will return to the position of *ready*, and continue the fire without command.

145. When the instructor wishes the firing to cease, he will command:

Cease—FIRING.

146. At this command the men will cease firing; if they have fired they will load their pieces, and bring them to a shoulder; if at the position of *ready*, they will half cock and shoulder arms; if at *aim*, they will bring down their pieces, half cock and shoulder arms.

To Fire by Rank.

147. The fire by rank will be executed by each entire rank, alternately.

148. The instructor will command:

1. *Fire by Rank*, 2. *Platoon*, 3. *Ready*, 4. *Rear Rank*, 5. *Aim*.

6. *Fire*. 7. LOAD.

149. At the third command the two ranks will take the position of *ready*, as prescribed in the direct fire.

150. At the seventh command, the rear rank will execute what has been prescribed in the direct fire, and afterwards take the position of *ready*.

151. As soon as the instructor sees several men of the rear rank in the position of ready, he will command:

1. *Front Rank*. 2. *Aim*. 3. *Fire*. 4. LOAD.

152. At these commands the men in the front rank will execute what has been prescribed for the rear rank, but will not step off with the right foot.

153. The instructor will re-commence the firing by the rear rank, and will thus continue alternately from rank to rank, until he shall wish the firing to cease, when he will command, *cease firing*, which will be executed as heretofore explained.

To Fire and Load Kneeling.

154. In this exercise the platoon will be supposed *loaded*, and drawn up in one rank, the instructor will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Platoon Kneeling.* 2. *Ready.* 3. *Aim.* 4. *Fire.* 5. LOAD.

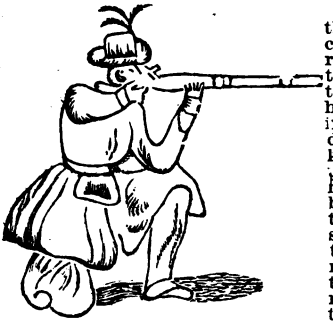


Fig. 11.

155. (*Fig* 11.) At the 2nd command, carry briskly the right foot about thirty inches to the rear of the left heel, and about six inches to the right, drop on the right knee, sieze the piece with the left hand at the lower band, and with the right at the small of the stock, the left elbow resting on the thigh; bring the right foot around to the left, and seat themselves comfortably on the right heel, in this position cock the piece and grasp the small of the stock.

156. At the third command, raise the piece with the right hand and support it with the left, near the lower band, the left elbow resting on the left thigh near the knee; bring the butt against the right shoulder and aim as heretofore explained.

157. At the fifth command, bring the piece down on the right side and support it with the left hand near the muzzle, the butt to the rear, and resting on the ground, barrel down, raise upon the right knee, carry the right hand to the cartridge box, (or flask) handle *cartridge*, charge *cartridge*, and *draw rammer*, to *ram cartridge*, place the piece under the right arm, and ram with both hands if necessary; *return rammer*, bring the piece to the front with the left hand, and seize it at the small of the stock with the right, turn the piece barrel uppermost, the muzzle at the height of the eye, the butt resting against the right thigh, half cock, remove the old cap and prime.

158. To resume the former position the instructor will command:

1. *Shoulder.* 2. ARMS.

159. At the second command, the men will raise to their feet and take the position of shoulder arms.

To Fire and Load Lying.

160. In this exercise the platoon will be in one rank

Digitized by Google

and deployed as skirmishers at not less than one pace distance, with pieces loaded.

161. The instructor will command:

1. *Platoon Lying.* 2. *Ready.* 3. *Aim.* 4. FIRE. 5. Load.

162. At the second command, the men will bring their pieces to an order, drop on both knees, and supporting the piece with the right hand, they will place themselves flat upon their bellies with the aid of the left; bring the piece down with the right hand, and seize it with the left near the tail band, the right at the small of the stock, the butt resting upon the ground under the right arm, barrel nearly horizontal. In this position, resting upon both elbows, heels together, they will cock their pieces with the right hand and seize them at the small of the stock.

163. At the command *aim*, raise the piece with the right hand, drop the muzzle to the front, and resting on both elbows, *aim* and *fire*.

164. At the command *load*, bring the piece down, turn upon the left side, still resting upon the left elbow, bring back the piece until the lock is opposite the breast, the butt resting on the ground; handle and tear cartridge, then seize the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock, holding the cartridge with the thumb and first two fingers; turn upon the back, still holding the piece with both hands; carry the piece to the rear, the barrel uppermost, place the butt between the feet, muzzle elevated. In this position, load, then turn upon the left side, bring the piece forward with both hands, rest upon the left elbow, half cock, brush off the old cap and *prime:*

165. The instructor wishing the firing to cease will command:

1. *Shoulder.* 2. ARMS.

166. At this command the men will execute what is indicated in No. 159.

Inspection of arms.

167. The men being at order arms, should the instructor wish to have an inspection of arms he will command:

Inspection—ARMS.

168. At this command, seize the piece at the upper band with the left hand and place the butt between the feet, the barrel to the front, draw the rammer and insert it in the bore, and resume the position of order arms.

169. The instructor will inspect the piece of each man, passing in front; each, when the instructor arrives opposite to and facing him, will raise his piece

Digitized by Google

smartly with his right hand, seize it with the left between the lock and guide sight, the lock to the front, the left hand at the hight of the chin, the left arm extended, the piece opposite the left eye, drop at the same time the right hand by the side.

170. The instructor will take the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock, throw it diagonally across the body and seize it with the left at the lower band; after inspection the piece, he will throw up the muzzle with the left hand, the barrel to his left, and with the right hand at the small of the stock return it to the man, who will seize it with the right at the lower band and resume *order arms*.

171. When the instructor shall have passed to the third file on the left of the man already inspected, he will retake the position prescribed at the command *inspection arms*, return rammer, and resume the position of order arms.

172. On general inspections, where the *inspecting officer* does not wish to examine the piece of each man minutely, he will so inform the regimental commandant who will cause the men to execute what is prescribed in No. 167. Then as the inspecting officer approaches the head of each company, the captain will command *shoulder*—ARMS, then add *arms*—PORT.

173. When the instructor arrives opposite the right file of a company, the man will turn his piece showing both sides of the barrel, causing also the rammer to ring in the bore at the same time, each man will excute what has just been prescribed for the leading file; after the inspector has passed each man will execute what is prescribed in No. 170, by bringing the piece down with both hands and place the butt between the feet.

174. After the platoon is well established in the manual of arms, the instructor will teach them to mark time and to change step, which will be executed in the following manner:

To mark time.

175. The platoon marching in the direct step, the instructor will command:

1. *Mark time.* 2. *March.*

176. At the first command which will be given at the instant either foot is coming to the ground, the men will make a semblance of marching by advancing first one foot and then the other, always bringing back the advanced foot and placing its heel by the side of the heel of the other.

177. To resume the direct step the instructor will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Forward.* 2. *March.*

178. At the second command, the men will step off with the left foot first and retake the step of twenty-eight inches.

To change step.

179. The platoon being in march the instructor will command:

1. *Change step.* 2. *March.*

180. At the second command which will be given at the instant either foot is coming to the ground, bring the foot that is in the rear, by the side of that which is in front, and step off again with the foot that was in front.

To march backwards.

181. The instructor wishing the platoon to march backward will command:

1. *Platoon backward.* 2. *March.*

182. At the second command the men will step off smartly with the left foot fourteen inches to the rear, reckoning from heel to heel, and so on with the feet in succession until the command *halt*, which will always be preceded by the caution of *platoon*. The men will halt at this command, and bring back the foot in front by the side of the other.

183. This step will always be executed in quick time.

184. The instructor will next teach them the principles of alignments; the touch of elbows in marching to the front; the principles of the march by the flank; wheeling from a halt; wheeling in marching and the change of direction.

185. The instructor will place the men in one rank faced to the front, and cause them to number off from right to left; he will then post the 2d lieutenant on the extreme right of the line, and the sergeant the seventh man from the right. For single rank maneuver, the lieutenant and five men on his left, will be designated the first section, and the sergeant and five men on his left, the second section.

Alignments.

186. The instructor will at first teach the men to align themselves man by man, in order the better to make them understand the principles; he will cause the first two files on the right flank to march two paces to the front, and having aligned them, will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Platoon, By File.* 2. *Right*—DRESS.

187. At the second command the men will turn the head and eyes as prescribed in No. 5, then, beginning on the right, will march in *quick time two paces forward*, shortening the last step so as to find himself about six inches behind the new line, which he should never pass. He will next move up by short steps, of two or three inches, to the side of the man next to him on the alignments, so that without deranging the head, the line of the shoulder or that of the eyes, he may find himself in the exact line of his neighbor, whose elbow he will touch without opening his own.

188. The instructor seeing the rank well aligned, will add:

FRONT.

189. At this command the men will turn their eyes to the front and remain firm.

190. Alignments to the left will be executed by inverse means.

191. When the men have thus learned to align themselves man by man, correctly and without jostling, the instructor will cause the entire rank to align itself at once, by the command:

Right (or left)—DRESS.

192. At this, the rank, except the two men placed in the advance as a basis, will move up in *quick time*, and place themselves on the new line, according to the principles prescribed in No. 186.

193. The instructor placed five or six paces in front and facing the rank, will carefully observe that the principles are followed, and then pass quickly to the flank, that has served as a basis to verify it; after seeing the rank aligned, he will add:

FRONT.

194. Alignments to the rear will be executed on the same principles, the men stepping back a little beyond the line, and then dressing up, the instructor commanding:

Right (or left) backward—DRESS.

195. The men having learned to march with steadiness in common time, and to take steps equal in length and swiftness, will be exercised only in *quick time*, *double quick time* and the *run*. The instructor will cause them to execute successively, at these different gaits, the march to the front, the facing about in marching, the march by the flank, the wheels at a halt and in marching, and the changes of direction.

Digitized by Google

196. The instructor will inform the men that at the command *march*, they will always move off in *quick time*, unless this command should be preceded by that of *double quick*.

To March to the Front.

197. The rank being correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march to the front, he will command:

1. *Platoon, Forward.* 2. *Guide right (or left).* 3. *March.*

198. At the word *march*, the rank will step off smartly with the left foot; the guide will take care to march straight to the front, keeping his shoulders always in a square with that line.

199. The men in marching to the front, will touch lightly the elbow towards the side of the guide, without opening out their own, always yielding to pressure coming from the side of the guide, and resisting that coming from the opposite side, maintaining the head direct to the front, no matter on which side the guide may be.

200. The men must be instructed to comprehend that, the alignment can only be preserved in marching, by the regularity of the step, the touch of the elbows, and the maintenance of the shoulders square with the line of direction.

201. The men being well established in the principles of the direct step or march, they will next be taught to march obliquely; the rank being in march, the instructor will command:

1. *Right (or left) Oblique.* 2. MARCH.

202. At the second command, each man will make a half face to the right, (or left) and will then march straight forward in the new direction; as the men no longer touch elbows, they will glance along the shoulders of the nearest file towards the side which they are obliqueing, and will regulate their step so that their shoulders shall always be behind that of their next neighbor on that side, and that his head conceals the heads of all the other men in that rank; besides this, the men will preserve the same length of step and same degree of obliquity. To resume the direct march the instructor will command:

FORWARD, *Guide left (or right.)*

203. At the word *forward*, each man will make a half face to the left (or right,) and will then march to the front, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

Digitized by Google

204. The instructor will pass the men from *quick* to *double* quick time, and the reverse, observing not to require them to march obliquely in double quick time, till they are well established in this step.

205. The platoon being in march, in quick time, the instructor will command:

1. *Double Quick.* 2. MARCH.

206. At the command *march*, which may be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the men will step off in double quick, observing the principles prescribed, and preserve their alignment.

207. In marching in *double quick time*, the men will always carry their pieces on the *right shoulder*, or at a *trail*. If the instructor shall wish the pieces carried at a *trail*, he will give the command *trail arms*, before that of *double quick*. If the command is not given, the men will shift their pieces to the right shoulder at the command double quick; in either case at the command *quick time* or *halt*, the men will bring their pieces to the position of *shoulder arms*, without command.

208. To resume *quick time* from that of *double quick*, the instructor will command:

1. *Quick Time.* 2. MARCH.

209. At the word *march*, given when either foot is coming to the ground, the men will retake the step in quick time.

210. The instructor will occasionally cause the men to mark time, by the command heretofore prescribed. The men will mark double quick time, without altering the cadence of the step.

211. The platoon being at a halt, the instructor will cause it to march in double quick time, by the command *double quick march*. He will also regulate the step by the command one, two, given as each foot should be brought to the ground.

212. If the platoon be marching in quick or double quick time, the instructor should wish to march in retreat, he will command:

1. *Platoon Right About.* 2. MARCH.

213. At the command *march*, which will be given when the left foot is coming to the ground, the men will bring this foot to the ground, and turning upon the left heel will face to the rear; bring the right heel by the side of the left, and then step off with the left to the rear.

Digitized by Google

The March by the Flank.

214. The rank being at a halt and correctly aligned, the instructor will command:

1. *Platoon, Two Ranks, to the Right*, 2. MARCH.

215. At the command *march*, the lieutenant and the five men on his left will step one pace to the front, halt and align themselves by the right; at the same time the sergeant and five men on his left will face to the right and step off smartly with the left foot, marching in rear of the first section. When the sergeant arrives opposite to and directly in rear of the lieutenant, they will halt, face to the front and close on the front rank, the sergeant covering accurately the lieutenant, and No. 2. of the rear rank covering No. 2. of the front rank, and so on from right to left.

216. The instructor seeing this movement executed, will command:

1. *Platoon Right* (*or left*) *Face*, 2. *Forward*, 3. MARCH.

217. At the word *face*, the men will all face to the right (or left;) the rear rank touching elbows with the front rank, will present a column of two men abreast.

218. At the third command the men will step off at once with the left foot, in quick time, the files keeping aligned and preserving their intervals.

219. The instructor will cause the following rules to be observed in marching by the flank:

That the step be executed according to the principles for the direct step, and that the head of the man who immediately precedes, covers the heads of all who are in front in the same rank.

220. The instructor will habitually place himself five or six paces on the flank of the rank marching in file, to watch over the execution of the principles prescribed above. He will also place himself sometimes in its rear; *halt* and suffer it to pass fifteen or twenty paces, the better to see whether the men cover each other accurately.

221. To halt the platoon marching by the flank and face it to the front, the instructor will command:

1. *Platoon*. 2. *Halt*. 3. *Front*. 4. *Right* (*or left*)—DRESS.

222. At the second command the rank will halt, and afterwards no man will stir, although he may have lost his distance. This prohibition is necessary to habituate the men to a constant preservation of their distance.

223. At the fourth command the men will align themselves, according to the principles heretofore

Digitized by Google

prescribed, taking the touch of the elbow towards the basis of alignment.

224. When the men have become accustomed to marching by a flank, the instructor will cause them to change direction by file, for this purpose he will command:

1. *File Left (or right).* 2. MARCH.

225. At the command *march*, the first file will change direction to the left, (or right) in describing a small arc of a circle, and will then march straight forward; the two men of this file in wheeling, will keep up the touch of elbows, the man on the side to which the wheel is made, will shorten the first three or four steps. Each file will come successively to wheel on the same spot where that which preceded it wheeled.

226. To cause the platoon to face by the right or left flank in marching, the instructor will command:

1. *Platoon to the Right (or left).* 2. MARCH.

227. At the second command, which will be given a little before either foot is coming to the ground, the men will turn their body; plant the foot that is raised in the new direction and step off with the other foot, without altering the cadence of the step.

228. If in facing to the right (or left) in marching the platoon should face to the rear, the rear rank men will move square to the front, followed by the front rank, at the prescribed distance.

229. The principles of the march by the flank in double quick time, are the same as in quick time, the instructor commanding: *Platoon forward, double quick march.* He will also pay the greatest attention to the cadence of the step, by repeating the commands one, two, etc., as each foot should be brought to the ground.

230. The instructor will cause the change of direction and the march by the flank, to be executed in double quick time, carrying the piece on the *right shoulder*, or at a *trail*.

231. The instructor may march the platoon by the flank without doubling the rank, the principles are the same.

232. To again reform the platoon in one rank, the instructor will command:

1. *Platoon, Single Rank, to the Left.* 2. MARCH.

233. At the second command the front rank will stand fast; the rear rank will face to the left and step off in quick time. When its right file is uncovered, the sergeant will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Halt*, 2. *Front*, 3. *Right*—DRESS.

234. At the first command the men will halt; at the command front they will face to the right, and then dress up on the front rank, as heretofore explained.

WHEELINGS—*General Principles.*

235. Wheelings are of two kinds; from the halt or on a fixed pivot, and in march, or on a moveable pivot.

236. Wheeling on a fixed pivot takes place in passing a corps from the order in line, to the order in column, or from the latter to the former.

237. Wheels in marching take place in changes of direction, as often as this movement is executed to the side opposite to the guide.

238. In wheels from a halt, the pivot man, at the word *march*, will only turn in his place by marking time, without advancing or receding, taking care to keep his shoulders on a line with the marching flank.

239. In the wheels in marching, the pivot man takes steps of nine or eleven inches, according as the platoon is marching in quick or double quick time, so as to clear the wheeling point before the next subdivision arrives on the same ground, which is necessary in order that they may not lose their distance by being delayed.

240. The men on the wheeling flank will take the full step of twenty-eight or thirty-three inches, according to the gait.

Wheelings from a Halt, or on a Fixed Pivot.

241. The platoon being at a halt, and in single rank, the instructor will command:

1. *Platoon Right Wheel.* 2. MARCH.

242. At the command *march*, the platoon will step off with the left foot, turning at the same time the head a little to the left, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men to their left; the pivot man will merely mark time in gradually turning his body, in order to conform to the movements of the marching flank. The man who conducts this flank will take steps of full twenty-eight inches, and from the first step advance a little the left shoulder; cast his eyes from time to time along the rank, and feel constantly the elbow of the man next on his right lightly, but never push him; the intermediate men will feel lightly the elbow of the next man towards the pivot, resisting pressure coming from the opposite side, each conforming himself to the marching flank, shortening his step according to his approximation to the pivot.

Digitized by Google

243. The instructor will cause the platoon to wheel around the circle once or twice before halting, in order to cause the principles to be better understood.

244. Wheels to the left will be executed on the same principles, and by inverse means. To arrest the wheel, the instructor will command:

1. HALT. 2. *Left (or right)*—DRESS.

245. At the second command, the rank will place itself on the alignment of the two men established as a basis, as heretorore prescribed. The instructor will then add, FRONT.

Wheeling in Marching or on a Moveable Pivot.

246. When the men have been brought to execute well the wheel from a halt, they will be taught to wheel in marching.

247. To cause the rank to change direction to the reverse flank, (to the side opposite to the guide) the instructor will command:

1. *Right (or left) Wheel.* 2. MARCH.

248. The first command will be given when the platoon is yet four paces from the wheeling point; at the second command the wheel will be executed in the same manner as from a halt, except that the touch of elbow will remain towards the marching flank, (or side of the guide) instead of the actual pivot; that the pivot man, instead of merely turning in his place, will conform himself to the movement of the marching flank, feel lightly the elbow of the next man, and take steps of full nine inches, thus gaining ground forward in discribing a small curve, so as to clear the point of the wheel, the middle of the rank slightly bending to the rear. As soon as the movement commences, the man who conducts the marching flank will cast his eyes over the ground which he will have to pass.

249. The wheel being ended, the instructor will command:

1. *Guide Left (or right.)* 2. FORWARD.

250. At the first command, the guide indicated will take an object, and march straight to the front.

251. At the word forward, which will be given at the instant the wheel is completed, the pivot man and all the rank will take steps of full twenty-eight inches; bring the head direct to the front, and take the touch of elbows towards the guide.

Digitized by Google

Turning or changing direction to the side of the guide.

252. The change of direction to the side of the guide in marching, will be executed as follows. The instructor will command:

1. *Left (or right) Turn.* 2. MARCH.

253. The first command will be given when the rank is yet four paces from the turning point.

254. At the command *march*, which will be given at the instant the rank ought to turn, the guide will face to the left (or right) in marching, and move forward in the new direction without slackening or quickening the cadence, and without shortening or lengthening the step. The whole rank will promptly conform itself to the new direction; to effect which each man will advance the shoulder opposite the guide, and take the double quick step; turn the head and eyes to the side of the guide, and retake the touch of the elbow on that side, in placing himself on the alignment of the guide, from whom he will take the step, and then resume the direct position of the head; each man will thus successively arrive on the alignment.

255. The instructor will take great care to not confound this movement with that of *wheeling* in marching.

Wheeling and changing direction to the side of the guide, in double quick time.

256. The instructor will cause the various movements to be executed in double quick time; the principles are the same, except that the command *double quick* will precede that of *march*. In wheeling while marching, the pivot man will take steps of eleven inches, and in the changes of direction to the side of the guide, the man on the side opposite to the guide must increase the gait, in order to bring themselves into line.

257. The platoon being in one rank, should the instructor wish to break into column by sections, he will command:

1. *Platoon, by Sections.* 2. *Right (or left) Wheel.* 3. MARCH.

258. At the command *march*, the platoon will wheel by sections to the right (or left;) the pivot man of each section will merely mark time in his place, and come around with the marching flank; the man on the marching flank will take the full step of twenty-eight inches, and when he arrives near the perpendicular, the chief of each section (that is the officer or sergeant) will command such section *halt*, left (or

Digitized by Google

right) *dress*. The sections being properly aligned, the instructor will command:

1. *Column Forward.* 2. *Guide Left (or right.)* 3. MARCH.

259. At the command *march*, the men will step off together in quick time, the guide of the rear section marching directly in the train of the guide of the section in the advance, and the men all taking the touch of the elbow towards the guide.

260. To change direction, the instructor will command:

1. *Change Direction to the Left (or right.)* 2. MARCH.

261. The first command will be given when the first section is about three or four paces from the wheeling point. At the command *march*, given at the instant that the first section should wheel, its chief will command such sections left (or right) *wheel*, MARCH. The wheel will be executed as heretofore explained for the wheel in marching; the next section will come up and wheel upon the same ground, its chief conforming to what has just been prescribed for the chief of the first.

262. The platoon marching by files, right in front, will break into column by sections, in the following manner. The instructor will command:

1. *By Sections, Break to the Left.* 2. MARCH.

263. At this all the men of the first section will face to the left, take the touch of elbows to the right, and move off in the new direction.

264. The second section will continue to march in the same direction, until it occupies the same ground where the first broke to the left, when its chief will give the same command as prescribed for the chief of first, except that he will repeat the number of his own section, the men conforming to what has been prescribed for the first section.

265. A platoon marching by files, left in front, will break into column by sections to the right, upon the same principles, substituting the command *right* for *left*.

266. The platoon being in march by sections, right in front, if the instructor wishes to form line to the left, he will command:

1. *Platoon Halt.* 2. *Left into Line Wheel.* 3. MARCH.

267. At the first command the men will halt, the chiefs of sections will instantly align their men; at the third command each section will wheel left into

Digitized by Google

line, each chief halting his section upon arriving near the line and commanding right DRESS.

268. To form right into line from column of sections, the instructor will command:

1. *On Right into Line.* 2. MARCH.

269. At the command *march*, the first section will *turn* right, and march three or four paces in the new direction, when its chief will halt and align it by the right.

270. The second section will continue to march square to the front, passing in rear of the first section; its chief will command: *second section right turn, march*, which will be executed according to the principles prescribed in No. 252, except that the men will not take the double quick step. Each man arriving successively on the line, will halt and dress by the right, and then resume their eyes direct to the front.

271. To form front into line from column, the instructor will command:

1. *Front into Line.* 2. MARCH.

272. At the second command, the first section will move three paces forward, and by command of its chief will halt.

273. The second section, at the command march, will by command of its chief oblique to the left, and as soon as its front is unmasked, its chief will command *forward, halt, right dress*, which will be executed as heretofore explained, taking care to halt his section in rear of the line, and then dressing up by short steps of two or three inches.

274. The platoon being in two ranks, face to the front and at a halt, should the instructor wish to form column by fours, he will command:

1. *Right, four deep.* 2. MARCH.

275. At the first command, the rear rank will step one pace to the rear.

276. At the word *march*, both ranks will face to the right; the odd numbers of both ranks (including officers and sergeants will stand fast, the even numbers will promptly place themselves on the right of the odd numbers, by a side step to the right, with the right foot, and one step forward with the left, so that when the movement is completed they will present a column of four men abreast.

277. The column may then be put in march by the command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left* (*or right*). 3. MARCH.

278. At the word *march*, the men will step off smartly with the left foot, the fours keeping aligned and preserving their intervals.

279. The change of direction in column *four deep*, will be executed by the same commands, and according to the principles prescribed in No. 248, and following, except that the chief of platoon only, will give the caution left (or right) wheel, at the first command; at the word march, the leading four will execute the wheel, followed by the remaining fours of his platoon wheeling upon the same ground.

280. When the instructor shall wish to halt the column marching by fours, he will command:

1. *Column.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Right* (*or left*) DRESS.

281. At the second command, the platoon will halt, and afterwards no man will stir although he may have lost his distance.

282. At the command *front*, the platoon will face to the front, the fours will undouble by the even number's promptly placing themselves on the left of the odd numbers, by a side step to the left with the left foot and one step forward with the right, the rear rank closing on the front to its proper distance.

283. At the fourth command, each rank will align itself by the right (or left) as heretofore explained.

284. To form *left four deep*, the instructor will give the same commands, substituting *left* for *right*; the principles are the same, except, that the even numbers stand fast, and the odd numbers place themselves on their right; the rear rank stepping to the rear at the caution of *four deep*.

285. To halt the column left in front, and face it to the front, the instructor will give the same commands as in No. 279; the men after facing to the front will execute what is prescribed in No. 281.

286. If in march and in column four deep right (or left) in front, the command should be given platoon *left* (or *right*) so as to face to their proper front; at the word march, the platoon will face to the front, and the ranks will undouble as indicated in No. 281, and continue the march in two ranks, the rear rank lengthening the step so as to gain its proper distance.

287. Should the platoon be marching by either flank at four deep, and by facing right or left they should face to the rear, the ranks will undouble in like manner, except the odd numbers will promptly place themselves on the left of the even numbers, and the front rank close on the rear.

Digitized by Google

288. From either of the above positions, *four deep* may be again re-formed on the march by the commands and principles prescribed for forming at a halt.

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

General Principles.

1. The company being assembled upon its own parade ground will by a signal from the first Lieutenant (which should be given about fifteen minutes before the time of forming company) form by platoon, and in order of hight from right to left conforming to the following principles:

2. The officers in charge of platoons by the command such platoon *fall in*, will cause the men to form in one rank upon their own ground face to the front, and at shoulder arms, the tallest men on the right, then placing themselves before the centre of their platoons will cause the men to count fives, post the sergeant on the right of the second five; and command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. *Two ranks to the right.* 3. MARCH.

3. This will be executed as prescribed in the school of the Platoon No. 214 and following. He will next command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. *To the rear, open order.* 3. MARCH.

4. At the second command the sergeant will step off smartly to the rear four paces from the front rank, in order to mark the alignment of the rear rank. At the the third command, the front rank will stand fast. The rear rank will step to the rear without counting steps and place themselves upon the alignment marked for this rank, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the platoon, No. 194. The sergeant will align this rank to the left and parallel to the front rank. The lieutenant will next add:

1. *Order*—ARMS. 2. *Inspection*—ARMS.

5. At the second command, they will take the position of inspection, as prescribed in the school of the platoon.

6. The lieutenant will then proceed to inspect the front rank, and the sergeant the rear rank, according to the principles heretofore explained. This being executed he will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 2. *Rear rank close order*. 3. MARCH.

7. At the command *march* the rear rank will close on the front rank to the prescribed distance; he will then command:

1. *Order*—ARMS. 2. REST.

8. At the second command, the men will take the position of rest, as indicated in the school of platoon. The lieutenant placing himself on the right, will await further orders.

Formation of the company.

9. The 1st lieutenant after selecting the ground where the company is to form, will post the company music in one rank on the line, and face to the front, he will then place himself on the line about where the left of the company will rest when formed; and facing the music will bring his sabre to a carry, as hereinafter provided.

10. The 1st lieutenant having taken this position the music will play *quick time* unless previously instructed to play *double quick*, and the 2d lieutenants will form their respective platoons on the line in the following manner:

11. The chief of the platoon that is to take the right of the company will step to the front of his platoon (the sergeant moving into the front rank and filling his place for the time) and command:

1. *Such platoon*. 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *Right*—FACE. 4. *Forward*. 5. MARCH.

12. He will then place himself on left of the sergeant, who will still remain in the front rank and direct his march on the music, on arriving on the left and about two paces from the music, he will command:

1. HALT. 2. FRONT.

13. After facing to the front the sergeant will move upon the alignment and be corrected in his position by the 1st lieutenant, who still remains at his post. The lieutenant will then command: *Right*—DRESS, which being executed he will add: 1. FRONT. 2. *Order* ARMS. 3. REST, and take his place on the right of the front rank, the sergeant stepping back to the right of the rear rank.

14. The chief of the other platoons will conform to what has just been prescribed for the first, except that they will close on the platoon already formed, and after placing themselves on the alignment will bring their men to *order arms, and rest*; then take their

Digitized by Google

places in line, each platoon moving out according to number or precedence will so arrive as to form the line consecutively without delay.

15. The company being formed the 1st lieutenant will correct the alignment, pass along the front to the centre, face to the left and march three paces, where he will again face the company, and command:

Attention to roll call.

16. At this command the men will still remain at the position of *rest*, but will preserve silence and answer as their names are called by the 1st lieutenant; this being executed he will command:

1. *Attention company.* 2. *Shoulder arms.* 3. *To the rear, open order.*

17. At the first command the men will resume the position of *order arms.* At the third the sergeant on the right of the rear rank and the left file will step off smartly to the rear four paces, judging the distance by the eye without counting steps, the lieutenant will observe that the two markers are on a line parallel to the front rank, then add:

4. MARCH.

18. At this command the front rank will stand fast, the rear rank will step to the rear and place themselves on the alignment, conforming to what is prescribed in school of platoon No. 194.

19. The 1st lieutenant seeing the ranks aligned will command:

Present—ARMS.

20. Seeing this executed he will face about to the captain, who is six paces in front, salute and report "*the company is formed.*" The 1st lieutenant will then on intimation from the captain, take post in front of the left centre of the company.

21. The captain having acknowledged the salute of the company by touching his hat will, after the 1st lieutenant has taken his post draw his sabre and command:

Shoulder—ARMS.

22. In active service, the company will be formed at once by command of the 1st lieutenant, when the men will form in two ranks at *shoulder arms* faced to the front; in this case care should be taken to cause both officers and men to occupy their relative places in the company.

23. The company being formed in this manner the 1st lieutenant after correcting the alignment will

Digitized by Google

command: *order arms, rest*; then call the company roll or attend to such other duties as may be required.

24. In the following exercises the captain will be charged with the instruction of the company and will herein be denominated the instructor.

25. Before closing the ranks the instructor may cause the company to be exercised in the manual of arms.

26. To close ranks the instructor will command:

1. *Rear rank.* 2. *Close order.* 3. MARCH.

27. At the command *march* the rear rank will close on the front and each man cover his file leader.

To fire by company.

28. To cause the fire by company to be executed the instructor will command:

1. *Company.* 2. READY. 3. AIM. 4. FIRE. 5. LOAD.

29. At the second command the instructor and 1st lieutenant will promptly take post as in line of battle. At the fifth command the men will *load at will* and then retake the position of *ready*.

30. The instructor will immediately recommence the firing by the command:

1. *Company.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

31. The firing will be thus continued until the command or signal to cease firing is given or sounded.

32. The instructor will sometimes cause *aim* to be taken to the right and left, observing to pronounce right (or left) *oblique* before that of *aim*, which will be executed according to the principles of oblique firing.

The fire by file.

33. The instructor to cause the fire by file will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Company.* 3. READY. 4. *Commence firing.*

34. The third and fourth commands will be executed as prescribed in school of the platoon No. 140 and following.

35. The firing will be commenced by the right file of the company, the next file will aim at the instant the first brings down their pieces to reload, and so on from right to left.

36. This rule will only be observed in the first discharge, after which each file will reload and fire without regulating themselves by others, conforming to what is prescribed in school of platoon, No. 144.

Digitized by Google

To Fire by Rank.

37. The instructor wishing to cause the fire by rank to be executed will command:

1. *Fire by Rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear Rank.* AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

38. The fifth and sixth commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of platoon, No. 149 and following.

39. The instructor seeing one or two pieces in the rear rank at a ready he will command:

1. *Front Rank.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

40. The firing will thus be continued by each rank alternately until the command or signal to cease firing is given or sounded.

41. The instructor will cause the firing to cease whether by company, by file or by rank, by sounding the signal to *cease firing* and at the instant this sound ceases the men will cease firing and conform to what is prescribed in the school of platoon, No. 146.

42. In this school except when powder is used the signal will be indicated by the command *cease firing* which will be pronounced by the instructor when he wishes the semblance of firing to cease.

43. The fire by file being that which is most frequently used against an enemy it is highly important that it be rendered perfectly familiar to the men. The instructor will, therefore labor to cause the men to aim with care and always at some particular object.

To Fire by the Rear Rank.

44. The instructor will cause the several fires to be executed by the rear rank, that is, to the rear. To effect this he will command:

1. *Company.* 2. *About*—FACE.

45. At the second command the company will face about. The instructor will move to where his services are most needed. The lieutenant will correct the alignment and then resume his position in line in rear of the left centre of the company, which has now become the right.

46. The instructor will cause to be executed the fire by company both direct and oblique, the fire by file and the fire by rank by the commands and means prescribed in the preceding sections.

47. The fire by file will commence on the left of the company now become the right. In the fire by rank the firing will commence with the front rank now become the rear.

Digitized by Google

48. The fire by company, by rank or by file may be executed with the front rank *kneeling* by simply observing to pronounce: *front rank kneeling*, before the command *ready*. In this case the front rank will continue to fire and load kneeling, by the commands already given for the fire by company, by file or by rank, until the signal to cease firing is sounded, when they will rise and bring their pieces to a shoulder, and resume their places in line.

49. To resume the proper front the instructor will command:

1. *Company.* 2. *About*—FACE.

50. In the preceding lessons the instructor will impress on the men the importance of always aiming at some particular object. He will also take care to make a short pause between the commands *aim* and *fire* to give the men time to aim with accuracy.

51. The instructor will recommend to the company in the different firings the highest degree of composure or presence of mind, he will neglect nothing that will contribute to this end.

To Advance in Line

52. The company being in line and the instructor wishing to exercise it by the front he will assure himself that the shoulders of the right guide and sergeant are perfectly in the direction of their respective ranks, and that the sergeant accurately covers the guide. He will then place himself twenty-five or thirty paces in front of them, face to the rear, and place himself exactly on the prolongation of the line passing between their heels; having assured himself on this line he will command:

1. *Company—Forward.*

53. At this command the right guide will take two points on the ground in the straight line which would pass between his own and the heels of the instructor. These dispositions being made, the instructor will add:

2. MARCH.

54. At this command the company will step off with life. The directing guide will observe with the greatest precision the length and cadence of the step, marching on the two points he has chosen, taking in succession, and always a little before arriving at the point nearest to him, new points in the advance, exactly in the same line with the first two, and at the

Digitized by Google

distance of some fifteen or twenty paces from each other.

55. The man next to the guide will take special care not to pass him. To this end he will keep his shoulders square and in line with those of the directing guide; and thus from right to left, the men preserving the head direct to the front, and keeping up the touch of the elbow lightly toward the guide.

56. The instructor, with a view to establish the men in the length and cadence of the step, and in the principles of the march in line, will cause the company to advance two or three hundred paces at once, without halting, if the ground will permit.

To halt the company marching in line and to align it.

1. *Company.* 2. HALT.

57. At the second command the company will halt. The lieutenant rectifies the alignment.

Oblique march in line.

58. The company being in the direct march, the instructor will command:

1. *Right (or left) Oblique.* 2. MARCH.

59. At the command *march*, the company will take the oblique step, observing the principles prescribed in the school of the platoon, No. 202. The rear rank men will preserve their distances, and march in rear of the man next on the right (or left) of their habitual file leaders. To resume the direct march, the instructor will command:

FORWARD.

60. At this command the company will resume the direct march; the instructor will move twenty or thirty paces in front of the directing guide, and will place himself facing the company, exactly in the prolongation of the guide and sergeant. The guide, on intimation, will then select two points, etc., as heretofore explained.

61. In the oblique march, the men not having the touch of the elbows, the guide will always be on the side towards which the oblique is made, without indication to that effect being given, and when the direct march is resumed, the guide will, without indication, be on the side where it was previous to the oblique. Whenever the men lose the alignment, the instructor will be careful that they regain it by lengthening or shortening the step, without altering the cadence or changing the direction.

Digitized by Google

To mark time, to march in double quick time and the back step.

62. The company being on the direct march and in quick time, he will command:

1. *Mark Time.* 2. MARCH.

63. This will be executed as prescribed in the school of platoon, No. 176. To resume the direct march:

1. *Company Forward.* 2. MARCH.

64. To cause the march in double quick time, the instructor will command:

1. *Company.* 2. *Double Quick.* 3. MARCH.

65. The command *march* will be given at the instant either foot is coming to the ground. To resume the march in quick time, he will command:

1. *Company.* 2. *Quick Time.* 3. MARCH.

66. The company being at a halt, the instructor may cause it to march in the back step, by the command:

1. *Company Backward.* 2. MARCH.

67. The back step will be executed according to the principles laid down in the school of platoon, No. 182. But the use of this step being rare, the instructor will not cause more than ten or fifteen steps to be taken in succession.

68. The instructor will not exercise the company in marching in double quick time, till the men are well established in the length and swiftness of the pace in quick time; he will then endeavor to render the march of one hundred and sixty-five paces per minute, equally, easy and familiar, observing the same erectness of body and composure of mind as in quick time.

69. When marching in double quick time, if a subdivision (in column) has to change direction by *turning*, or has to form line, the men will quicken the pace to one hundred and eighty steps per minute. The same swiftness of step will be observed under all circumstances, when great rapidity of movement is required.

To march in retreat.

70. The company being halted and correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to march in retreat, he will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Company.* 2. *About*—FACE.

71. The company having faced about, the instructor will place himself in front of the directing guide, conforming to what is prescribed in No. 52, and add:

3. *Company Forward.*

72. At this command the directing guide will pass quickly into the rear rank, now become the front, and will conform to what is indicated in No. 52, and following, the instructor will then add:

4. MARCH.

73. This march will be conducted on the same principles as the advance in line.

74. The instructor will cause to be executed, marching in retreat, all that has been prescribed for advance.

75. The instructor having halted, the company will, when he wishes, face to the front, by the command prescribed in No. 49.

76. The company being in march by the front rank, the instructor will cause the right about to be executed by the command:

1. *Company.* 2. *Right About.* 3. MARCH.

77. At the third command the company will promptly face about, and recommence the march by the rear rank.

78. To resume the march by the front rank, the instructor will give the same command, and regulate the march by the same means.

79. In marching in double quick time, the distance between the ranks will be thirty-three inches; the pieces will be habitually carried on the right shoulder.

80. Whenever the company is halted, the men will bring the pieces to a shoulder at the command HALT, and the rear rank will close to its proper distance.

81. When the pieces are carried on the right shoulder in quick time, the distance between the ranks will be twenty-six inches. Whenever the instructor brings the company from a shoulder to this position, the rear rank must shorten a little the first steps to gain the prescribed distance, and will lengthen the steps on the contrary, in order to close up when the pieces are brought to a shoulder.

82. In all cases where the pieces are carried at the *right shoulder* or at the *trail*, they will be brought to a shoulder at the command *halt*.

To march by the flank.

83. The company being in line and at a halt, to cause

Digitized by Google

it to march by the right flank, the instructor will command:

1. *Company Right*—FACE 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.

84. At the first command the company will face to the right; at the command *march* the company will step of smartly in quick time; the lieutenant and sergeant will direct their march straight forward, the men of the rear rank marching abreast of their respective front rank men, and touching elbows on that side, all observing the principles laid down in the school of platoon, No. 218.

85. The march by the left flank will be executed by the same commands, substituting *left* for *right.*

To change direction by file.

86. The company being faced by a flank, and either at a halt or on the march, to cause it to change direction, the instructor will command:

1. *File left* (*or right.*) 2. MARCH.

87. At the command *march*, the first file will wheel; if to the left or side of the front rank man, he will take care not to turn at once, but to describe a small arc of a circle, shortening a little the first two or three steps, to give the rear rank man time to conform to the movement. If the wheel be to the side of the rear rank man, he will conform himself to the movement laid down for the front rank man. Each file will wheel on the same ground where that which preceeded it wheeled.

88. The instructor will see that the wheel be executed according to these principals, in order that the distance between the files may be preserved, and that there be no check or hindrance at the wheeling point.

To halt the company marching by a flank and face it to the front.

1. *Company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

89. At the third command the company faces to the left if marching by the right flank, and to the right, if marching by left. As soon as the company has faced, the lieutenant will move briskly to where the marching flank has halted, establish a basis, and command: 1: *Right* (*or left*)—DRESS. 2. FRONT, and then resume his place in line.

Marching by a flank to form on right (*or left*) *by file into line.*

90. If the company be marching by the right flank the instructor will command:

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Fig. 1. P. 49

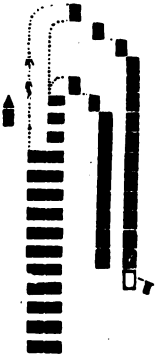


Fig. 2. P 50

Digitized by Google

(Fig. 1.) 1. *On right into line.* 2. MARCH.

91. At the first command, the lieutenant will pass quickly to the point where the right of the company is to rest, to mark the alignment, and place himself facing the direction the company is marching, will bring his sabre to a present, and remain in this position until the company has formed, when he will correct the alignment, and resume his place in line.

92. At the command *march*, given the instant the right guide is abreast with the adjutant, the rear rank will mark time; the guide will turn to the right and place himself on the line, his right arm touching lightly the left breast of the lieutenant, the first front rank man will pass the ground where the guide turned, and then turn to the right and place himself by the left side of the guide, the next front rank man will pass in rear of the first, turn to the right and place himself on the left of the first, and thus in succession from right to left, the rear rank will mark time, until the guide and two men on his left of the front rank has formed on the line, when they will turn to the right in succession, conforming to what is prescribed for the front rank, each directing himself on his file leader.

93. If the company be marching by the left flank, the instructor will cause it to form, *on left into line*, on the same principles, substituting in the command *left* for *right*. In either case the instructor will cause the lieutenant to so select the ground that the men may have at least six paces to march after turning.

Marching by a flank, to form by company or platoon into line.

94. The company being in march by the right flank, will form line, by the command:

1. *By company into line.* 2. MARCH.

95. At the command *march* the guide will continue to move straight forward, the men will advance the right shoulder and take the double quick step, and move up into line by the shortest route; as they successively arrive on the line with the guide, they will take the step from him, and then turn their eyes to the front.

96. The men of the rear rank will conform to the movements of their respective file leaders.

97. At the instant the movement commences, the lieutenant will briskly move up and keep on a line with the shoulders of the right guide, and outside the ground, the left of the company will occupy when formed, in order to prevent the men from passing the perpendicular.

Digitized by Google

98. As soon as the company is formed the instructor will command *guide left*, when the left guide will promptly select objects on the point of direction, by the aid of the 1st lieutenant, as hereto explained, the whole moving forward touching elbows to the left.

99. This movement will be executed while marching by the left flank, by the same commands, and by inverse means. The company being formed the instructor will command:

Guide Right.

100. The company being in march by the right flank, the instructor will cause it to form platoons by the command:

1. *By platoons.* 2. MARCH.

101. This movement will be executed by each platoon according to the above principles, each chief of platoon without waiting for the other will command, *guide left*, at the instant their respective platoons are formed, when the left file of each platoon will act as the directing guide, the first taking points of direction, and the remainder following exactly in his trace.

102. In marching by the left flank, the movements will be executed by inverse means, each chief of platoon giving the command, *guide right* as soon as their platoons are formed.

Marching in column by platoons, to march by a flank in the same direction.

(Fig. 2.) 1. *Column, by the right flank.* 2. *File left.* 3. MARCH.

103. At the command *march* each platoon will face to the right in marching, and wheel by files to the left, and then march straight forward; the leading file of the second platoon will unite with the rear file of the first, and thus form front to rear.

104. If the company is marching by platoons right in front and the instructor should wish to march in retreat by files, he will command:

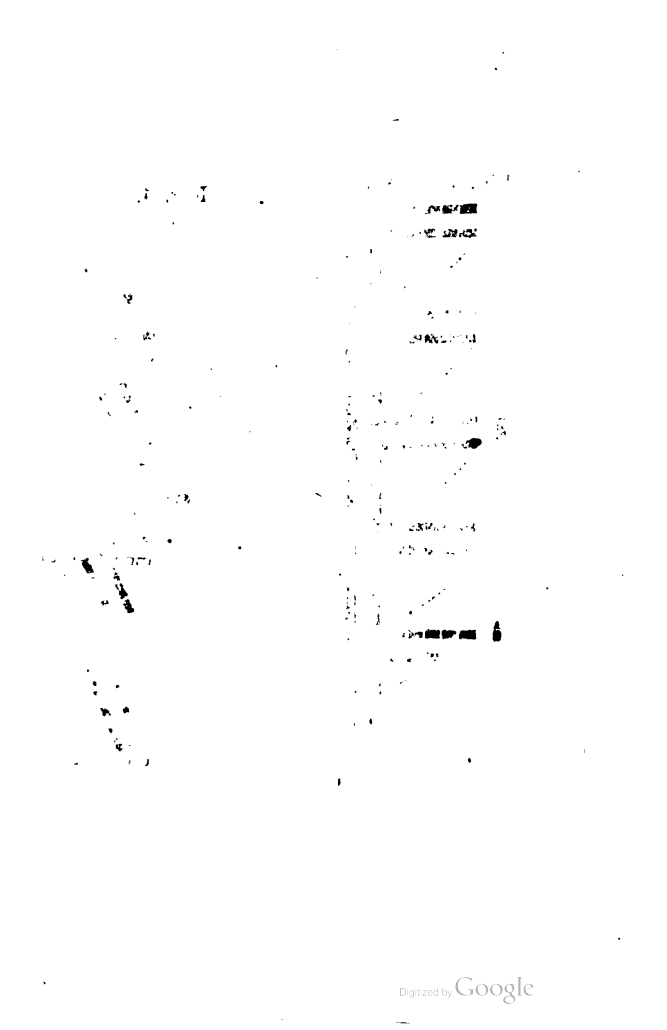
1. *Column, by the left flank.* 2. *File left.* 3. MARCH.

105. This movement will be executed on the same principles, the left file of the fourth platoon uniting with the right file of the fifth, the whole moving to the rear.

To break from a halt into column by platoons.

106. The company being at a halt and faced to the front, the instructor will command:

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Fig. 3. P 51

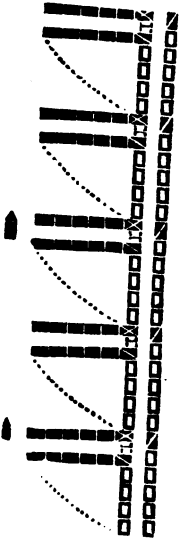


Fig. 4. P 55

Digitized by Google

(Fig. 3.) 1. *By platoon, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

107. At the command *march*, each platoon will wheel to the right according to the principles prescribed for the wheel on a fixed pivot, and when the man who conducts the marching flank of each platoon arrives within one pace of the perpendicular, its chief will command:

1. *Such platoon.* 2. HALT.

108. At the command *halt*, the men will stop short on the advanced foot, the left guide of each platoon will instantly place himself upon the line, taking care not to leave more space between himself and the pivot man, then will contain the intermediate files, this done the chief of each platoon will add:

3. *Left*—DRESS. 4. FRONT.

109. The company will break by platoons to the left according to the same principle; the chiefs of platoons on arriving near the perpendicular, will command, *such platoon* HALT, and then placing themselves on the line, command:

1. *First, second* or *third* (as the case may be) *platoon.* 2. *Right* DRESS, and as soon as the alignment is ended. 3. FRONT.

To march in column.

110. The company having wheeled by platoons to the right the instructor will command:

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH.

111. At the second command, the left guide of the leading platoon will take two points on the ground in a straight line to the front, at the third the whole will step off together; the guides of the rear platoons marching exactly in the trace of the leading one, preserving between the latter and himself a distance precisely equal to the front of his platoon, the men will each feel lightly the elbow of his neighbor towards the guide.

112. A column left in front will be put in march, according to the same principles, substituting in the command:

Guide right for guide left.

113. The instructor wishing to break by platoons to the right, and move the column forward without halting will caution the company to that effect, and command:

Digitized by Google

1. *By platoon.* 2. *Right wheel.* 3. MARCH.

114. At the command *march* the platoons will wheel to the right, conforming to the principles herein prescribed; when the man who conducts the marching flank arrives near the perpendicular the instructor will add:

4. *Guide left.* 5. FORWARD.

115. At the fourth command, the leading guide will instantly take points on the ground as before explained, at the fifth, which will be given at the instant the first platoon has completed the wheel, all the platoons will move straight to the front, the men taking the step of twenty-eight inches, the guides of the rear platoons placing themselves on, and following the trace of the leading one, the men touching lightly the elbows towards the guide.

116. The company may break by platoons to the left, according to the same principles, substituting *guide right* for *guide left.*

117. The instructor placed in front of the company, will observe whether the movement be executed according to the principles prescribed above; whether the platoons after wheeling into column, are perpendicular to the line just occupied; and whether the guide who placed himself where the marching flank of the platoon has to rest, has left between himself and the front rank man on the right (or left) the space necessary to contain the front of the platoon.

118. If the company be marching in line to the front, the instructor will cause it to break by platoons to the right or left, by the commands prescribed in No. 113 and following. At the command *march*, the platoons will wheel to the right, (or left) in the manner already explained, the pivot man will take care to mark time in his place, without advancing or receding, the guides conforming to what is prescribed in No. 115.

Remarks on the march in column.

119. If the chiefs and guides of platoons neglect to lead off and decide the march from the first step, the march will be begun in uncertainty, which will cause waverings, a loss of the step, and a loss of distance.

120. If the leading guide take unequal steps, the march of his platoon, and that which follows, will be uncertain; there will be undulations, quickenings and slackenings in the march, and if the same guide be not habituated to prolong a given direction, without deviation he will describe a crooked line, and the column must wind to conform itself to such line.

Digitized by Google

121. If the following guides does not march in the trace of the preceding one, he will lose his distance at every moment in endeavors to regain the trace, the preservation of which is the most important principle in the march in column.

122. The guide of each platoon in column will be responsible for the direction, distance, and step; the chief of the platoon for the order and conformity of his platoon with the movements of the guide.

123. The instructor will watch over the execution of all the principles prescribed; he will also, sometimes, place himself in rear, align himself on the guides, and halt, pending some thirty paces together, to verify the accuracy of the guides.

To change direction.

124. The changes of direction of a column while marching will be executed according to the principle prescribed for wheeling on the march.

125. Whenever a column is to change direction the instructor will change the guide if not already there, to the flank opposite the side to which the change is to be made, if to the right he will command, *guide left*, if to the left, *guide right*, provided the guide is not already in that position.

126. The column being right in front, and the instructor should wish to change direction to the right, he will command, *change direction to the right*, and immediately go himself or send the 1st lieutenant to the point where the change of direction is to be made.

127. The instructor or lieutenant will place himself on the direction of the guides, so as to present his breast to that flank of the column.

128. The leading guide will direct his march on the marker, so that in passing, his left arm may graze his breast, when he arrives within four paces the chief of first platoon will command, *first platoon right wheel*, followed by *march* the instant the guide is abreast with the marker; the wheel being nearly ended, the same chief will command, *forward*,, and when completed, *guide left*, when the platoon will move forward, the guide taking points on the ground in the new direction.

129. The remaining platoons will continue to march straight forward till up with the marker, when they will wheel to the right, in succession and retake the direct march by the same commands.

130. If the column be in march right in front to change direction to the left the instructor will command *guide right*. At this command the leading guide will take points on the ground, and the rear guides

Digitized by Google

placing themselves in his trace, the men taking the touch of elbows to the right.

131. The change of direction to the left will then be executed according to the same principles, as the change to the right, substituting in the commands, *left* for *right*, and when the change is completed the instructor will command:

Guide Right.

132. The change of direction will be executed with the left in front by inverse means.

133. In changes of direction in double quick time the platoons will wheel according to the principles prescribed in the school of the platoon No. 256.

134. In order to prepare the men for those formations in line, which can only be executed by turning to the right or left, the instructor will sometimes cause the column to change direction to the side of the guide, by the command:

Head of column left (or right) turn.

135. In this case the chiefs of platoon will command, *left* (or right) turn instead of left (or right) wheel, when each platoon in succession will turn, conforming to what is prescribed in school of the platoon No. 253 and 254.

136. It is highly important to preserve distances and direction, that all the sub-divisions in a column should change direction precisely at the same point; it is for this purpose that that point should always be marked in advance, that the guides may direct their march upon the marker.

137. Each chief of platoon will take care that his sub-division arrives at the point of change in a square with the line of direction.

To halt the column.

1. *Column.* 2. HALT.

138. At the second command the column will halt. The guides will stand fast, although they may have lost both distance and direction.

139. If a guide having lost distance seek to recover it after the command he will only throw his fault on the following guide, who having marched well will no longer be at his proper distance.

140. The instructor wishing to form line will place himself about ten paces in advance of the leading guide, face to him and rectify if necessary the guides of the rear platoon, then command:

Digitized by Google

(Fig. 4.) 1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. MARCH.

141. At the command *march*, the platoons will all wheel to the left, on the principles of wheel, form a halt; each chief of platoon on arriving near the perpendicular will command:

1. *Such platoon.* 2. HALT.

142. The 1st lieutenant at the instant the movement commences will move rapidly to the point where the right of the company, will rest when in line, and as soon as the first platoon halts, he will cause the right guide to step up on the line and then command, *right dress.* This being ended he will add, FRONT, and resume his place in line.

143. If the left be in front they will be formed into line by the commands, *right into line, wheel*, which will be executed on the same principles, and by inverse means, the 1st lieutenant will go to the point where the left of the company will rest, and command:

Left—DRESS. FRONT, &c.

144. If the column be marching right in front, and the instructor should wish to form it into line without halting the column, he will give the commands prescribed in No. 140. At the command *march*, the left guides will halt short and mark time on their own ground, conforming to the movements of the marching flank, the lieutenant and chiefs of platoons will conform to what is prescribed in No. 142 and following.

145. Should the instructor wish to form left into line without halting, and continue the march in that direction, he will command:

1. *By platoons, left wheel.* 2. MARCH.

146. This command will be executed on the same principles prescribed in No. 141, except that when the right of platoons arrives near the line the instructor will command:

3. *Guide right (or left).* 4. FORWARD.

147. At the third command the guide designated will take points of direction, and at the fourth, given at the instant the wheel is completed, the whole will move off, touching elbows towards the side of the guide.

To break the company into platoons and to reform the company.

148. The company being in march to the front in line and the instructor should wish to march in the

Digitized by Google

same direction in columns by platoons right in front, he will command:

(Fig. 5.) 1. *Company.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. *Platoons break to the left.* 4. MARCH.

149. At the command MARCH the chief of the first platoon will briskly command: 1. *First platoon forward.* 2. *Guide right*, when it will continue to move square to the front; all the remaining platoons at the command *march* will face by the right, and march straight forward, and when the chief of the second platoon arrives near the trace of the chief of the first, he will command:

1. *Second platoon.* 2. *By the left flank.* 3. *March.* 4. *Guide right.*

150. The word *march* will be given the instant he arrives on the trace of the guide of the first platoon, when the men of the second platoon will all face to the left, and at the fourth command given after the men have faced, take the touch of the elbows to the right and march directly in the trace of the first platoon.

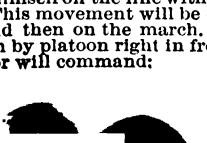
151. The third, fourth, and fifth platoons will break to the left by the same commands and means prescribed for the second. The instructor as soon as the fifth platoon has faced to the left in column, command *guide left*; when the guide of the leading platoon will take points of direction to the front, and all the remaining guides place themselves upon his trace.

152. The company may be broken into column, left in front by inverse means, the chief of the fifth platoon at the command *march*, will command *guide left* and move square to the front, and as soon as the men of the first platoon have faced to the right in marching, the instructor will command:

Guide right.

153. In this case chiefs of platoons will be careful to give the command, 1. *By the right flank.* 2. MARCH, a little before the left file of their platoons arrive on the trace of the left guides of the preceding one rather than to allow them to pass the line, which would unavoidably cause a loss of distance as well as direction, and then command, *guide left* as soon as their men have faced, which will give time for the left guide to place himself on the line without loosing his distance.

154. This movement will be executed at first from a halt and then on the march. The company being in column by platoon right in front and at a *halt*, the instructor will command:



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Fig. 5. P 56

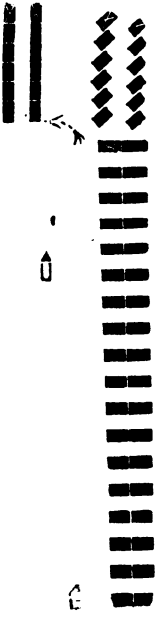
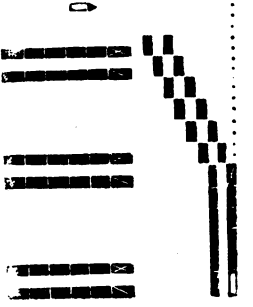


Fig. 6. P 60.



Digitized by Google

1. *Form Company.* 2. MARCH.

155. At the first command the 1st lieutenant will move briskly to the point where the left of the company is to rest, and place himself on the line and facing the first platoon.

156. At the command *march*, the chief of first platoon will command, *right dress* and stand fast. The chiefs of the second, third, fourth and fifth platoons will briskly command: 1. *such platoon, left oblique,* MARCH; when the men of each platoon will take the oblique step, and as soon as each clears the left file of the preceding one he will command HALT, then placing himself on the line,

Right Dress—FRONT.

157. The 1st lieutenant will then correct any errors in the alignment that may occur and resume his place in line.

158. To form company on the *march* the commands and means are the same except that the leading platoon continues to march square to the front, its chief commanding *guide right.* The chiefs of the other platoons commanding *double quick* before that of *march,* and move upon the line in double quick time, retaking the steps from the platoon already formed in quick time as they successively arrive.

159. The instructor as soon as the company is formed will command:

Guide Left.

160. When the company is in column by platoon left in front, they will be formed by inverse means, the principles are the same.

Diminishing and Increasing of a Column by Platoons.

161. Platoons will be broken off from the directing flank only. That is from the left flank when the right is in front and from the right flank when the left is in front.

162. The company being in march and supposed to constitute part of a column right in front, the instructor, in order to pass an obstruction which may arise on the left of the company, will command:

1. *Fifth Platoon, from Left to Rear.* 2. MARCH.

163. At the first command the chief of this platoon will add:

By the Right Flank, File Left.

164. At the command, march, the platoon will face to the right in marching, and wheel by files to the

Digitized by Google

left, the chief of platoon directing himself on the left file of the company.

165. If another platoon is to break to the rear, the same commands will be given both by the instructor and chief of platoon substituting fourth for fifth which will be executed as explained above. The platoon already in rear will mark time and as the other platoon faces by the right flank and breaks by file to the left they will unite with the rear of this platoon, break by file to the *right* and then *left*, and thus continue until the instructor commands:

1. *Platoons into Line.* 2. MARCH.

166. At this they will re-form on the line, conforming to what is prescribed in No. 95, except that the right file of the leading platoon will unite and form on the left of the platoon already on the line.

167. These movements will be executed when the left is in front by inverse means, substituting *first* for *fifth*, *left flank* for *right flank*, and *file right* for *file left*.

To March the Column in route and execute the movements incident thereto.

168. The swiftness of the route step will be at the rate of one hundred and ten steps per minute, which will be habitually maintained in columns in route when the roads and ground will permit.

169. The company being at a halt in line or in column by platoons, to cause it to march in the route step, the instructor will command:

1. *Column Forward.* 2. *Guide Left* (*or right*). 3. *Route Step.* 4. MARCH.

170. At the command *march*, both ranks will step off together; the rear rank will take, in marching, by shortening a few steps the distance of one pace (28 inches) from the front rank, which distance will be computed from the breasts of the rear rank men to the backs of the front rank. The men will without further command carry arms *at will*, when they will not be required to preserve silence or march in the cadence step, but may march at ease, care being taken to prevent the ranks from intermixing; the front rank from getting in advance of the guide or the rear rank from opening to too great a distance.

171. The company marching in the route step will change direction without formal commands on a caution or indication from the captain. The rear rank will come up to change direction in the same manner as the front, rank; each rank will conform itself in the route step to the principles prescribed for the

Digitized by Google

change in closed ranks, except that the pivot man will take steps, fourteen inches instead of nine, in order to clear the wheeling point.

172. To cause the cadenced step to be resumed the instructor will command.

1. *Quick Time.* 2. MARCH.

173. At the command *march*, the men will bring their pieces to a shoulder, retake the cadence step from the guide, the rear rank closing to its proper distance.

174. The company marching by the route step, the instructor will cause it to march by a flank by the commands:

1. *Company by the Right (or left) Flank.* 2. *File Left (or right).* 3. MARCH.

175. At the command march, the company will face to the right (or left) and wheel immediately to the left (or right); all the files will come up in succession to wheel on the same spot where that which preceded it wheeled. If there be files or platoons broken off to the rear they will by wheeling regain their respective places and follow the movement of the company.

176. The company being at a halt and in line, should the instructor wish to exercise it by fours, he will command:

1. *Right (or left) Four Deep.* 2. MARCH.

177. This movement will be executed as prescribed in the school of platoon.

Counter-march.

178. The company being at a *halt*, and in line right in front, to cause it to counter-march, the instructor will command:

1. *Counter-march.* 2. *Company Right Face.* 3. *File Left.* 4. MARCH.

179. At the word *march*, the company will step off smartly; the first file will wheel to the left, march two paces, and again wheel to the left, then direct its march along the front rank, so as to arrive behind and about two paces from where the left of the company formerly rested; this point being marked by the 1st lieutenant at the instant the movement commences. Each file will come up successively to wheel on the same ground where the first wheeled, the leading file having arrived near the point where the right is to rest, the instructor will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Right* DRESS.

180. The command *halt* will be given at the instant the right file arrives abreast with the lieutenant, when the men will halt, and at the fourth be aligned by the right.

181. In a column by platoon the counter-march will be executed by the same commands and on the same principles, the instuctor commanding *halt*, at the instant the right file of platoon arrives opposite to where the left rested before the movement commenced, which point should be marked by himself or 1st lieutenant.

182. In column left in front the counter-march will be executed by inverse means.

Being in Column by Platoon, to Form Right (or left) into Line.

183. Being in march and in column by platoon right in front, the instructor wishing to form into line to the right, will command:

(Fig. 6.) 1. *On Right into Line.* 2. *Guide Right.*

184. At the second command the men will all take the touch of elbows to the right, the column continuing to move straight forward; at the same time the 1st lieutenant, passing around the rear of the company will move briskly to the point where the right of the company ought to rest when in line and place himself as indicated in No. 91, which line should be so chosen that the guide of each platoon after turning to the right will have at least six paces to march before arriving on the line.

185. The head of the column having arrived nearly opposite the 1st lieutenant, the instructor will add:

3. MARCH.

186. At this the first platoon will turn to the right, conforming to the principles prescribed in school of platoon, No. 253 and 254. Its chief will direct his march on the 1st lieutenant, and when within one pace of the line, he will command, *halt*, then placing himself upon the line will add:

Right DRESS. FRONT.

187. The second platoon will continue to move straight forward, until its guide shall arrive opposite the left file of the first, when its chief will command, *right turn*, when this platoon will move on the line, its guide directing himself on the left file of the first platoon. On arriving abreast with the rear rank

Digitized by Google

its chief will command, *halt, right dress*, which will be executed as heretofore explained.

188. The third, fourth and fifth platoons will each successively conform to what has just been prescribed for the second.

189. A column by platoon left in front will form left into line according to the same principles and by inverse means.

To Stack Arms.

190. At this command number *three* of the front rank in each platoon will pass his piece before him, seize it with the left hand near the upper band, and place the butt a little in advance of his left toe, the barrel towards the body, and draw the rammer slightly from its place; number *two* of the front rank will also draw the rammer slightly and pass his piece to number *three*, who will seize it with the right hand near the upper band, and placing the butt a little in advance of the right toe of number *two*, the barrel to the front, he will cross the rammers of the pieces, the rammer of number two being inside. Number *three* of the rear rank will slightly draw his rammer, lean his piece forward, the lock plate downward; advance the right foot about six inches, and insert the rammer between the rammer and the barrel of the piece of his file leader; with the right hand he will place the butt of his piece about thirty-six inches in rear of and perpendicular to the front rank, bringing back his right foot by the side of his left. Number three of the front rank will at the same time lean the stack to the rear and force down all the rammers. The stack being formed, the remaining men of the platoon will pass their pieces forward, the barrel down, and rest it on the stack.

191. The men of each platoon having taken the first position without arms, the instructor will command:

1. *Break Ranks.* 2. MARCH.

192. To again form line and resume arms, the men of each platoon, at the signal or command to form company, will withdraw his piece from the stack and resume his place in line at shoulder arms; the numbers forming the stack being careful to sieze their pieces at the same time, and by raising the stack loosen the rammers, thereby avoiding danger of the pieces falling.

Digitized by Google

INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

General Principles.

1. By the term *skirmishers*, will herein be understood, any company or body of infantry, thrown out and actually deployed into open files or loose order. This term will only be applied to the companies whilst so extended; the moment that they are reassembled or reformed into closed files, they will resume their habitual denomination of 1st or 2d company, etc., as the case may be.

2. Skirmishers will be thrown out to clear the way for and to cover the movements of the main corps to which they belong; consequently they may be thrown out to the front, to a flank, to the rear, or in the several directions as may be deemed necessary.

3. When skirmishers are thrown out for this purpose, they will regulate their movements so as to keep the main body constantly covered.

4. Movements of skirmishers, though made in loose files, must be subject to such rules as will give to their commander the means of moving them in any direction, with the greatest promptitude; nevertheless it is not expected that these movements will be executed with the same precission as in closed ranks, because such exactness would materially interfere with their prompt execution.

5. Each company or body of skirmishers will always have a reserve, the strength of which will vary according to circumstances. If the body thrown out be within sustaining distance of the main corps, a reserve of one or two platoons will be sufficient for each company, whose duty will be to furnish the line with cartridges, relieve the fatigued, and serve as a rallying point. If at too great a distance, a whole company or companies may be employed as a reserve for the same purpose.

6. The reserves will be placed behind the centre of the line of skirmishers, the company reserves at one hundred and the principal reserve at two hundred paces, or according to circumstances. The reserves, while holding themselves within sustaining distance of the line, should be, as much as possible, in a position to afford each other mutual protection, and will profit by any accident the ground may present, to conceal themselves from the view of the enemy.

7. The movements of skirmishers will be executed in *double quick time*, the *run* being resorted to only in cases of urgent necessity, the skirmishers carrying their pieces in the manner most convenient to them.

Digitized by Google

8. The movements will be habitually indicated by the sounds of the bugle, the officers, and if necessary, the sergeants will repeat and cause the commands to be executed, as soon as they are given; but to avoid mistakes when signals are used, they will wait until the last bugle note is sounded, before commencing the movement.

9. When skirmishers are required to move rapidly, the officers will see that the men economize their strength, keep cool, and profit by all the advantages which the ground may offer for cover.

Deployments.

10. A company may be deployed as skirmishers in two ways: forward and by a flank; the deployment forward will be adopted when the company is behind the line on which it is to be established as skirmishers; and by a flank when it is already on that line.

11. Whenever a company is to be thrown out as skirmishers, the left file of the platoons to be deployed will be detached as a guard for the captain, and the platoons counted in fours, irrespective of officers or sergeants, and divided in the centre, that is, between two and three of each rank, forming groups of four men, who will be careful to know and sustain each other. When the entire company is to be deployed, the left files of the fourth and fifth platoons will form a guard for the 1st lieutenant.

12. A company may be deployed on its right, left or centre file, or on any other designated file. In this manner skirmishers may be thrown forward with the greatest possible rapidity on any ground they may desire to occupy, the interval depending on the extent of ground to be covered; but in general groups of four men, should not be removed more than thirty paces from each other; the distance between men of the same group, when deployed, will be four paces; in no case will they lose sight of each other.

13. A chain of skirmishers ought generally to preserve their alignment, but no advantages the ground may offer for shelter will be sacrificed to obtain this regularity.

To Deploy Forward.

14. A company being at a halt, when the captain shall wish to deploy it forward on left file of third platoon, holding the fourth and fifth platoon in reserve, he will command:

(*Fig. 7.*)1. *Three Right Platoons, as Skirmishers.*

Digitized by Google

2. *On Left Group take Intervals.* 3. MARCH (*or double quick*—MARCH.)

15. At the first command, the sergeants of the platoons designated, will promptly place themselves one pace in rear of the centres of their respective platoons; and the files composing the guard will briskly form two paces in rear of the second platoon; the captain will indicate to the sergeant of the left group the point on which he wishes him to direct his march; at the same time the first lieutenant, placing himself before the centre of the fourth and fifth platoons, will command:

1. *Reserve.* 2. *About*—FACE. 3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH.

16. At the fourth command the reserve will step two or three paces to the rear, so as to unmask the left flank of the third platoon, when it will be halted by the 1st lieutenant, and faced to the front.

17. At the command *march*, the left group of four men, conducted by the sergeant of the third platoon, will direct itself on the point indicated; all the other groups of fours, throwing forward the left shoulder, will move diagonally to the front in double quick time, so as to gain to the right the space of twenty paces, which will be the distance between each group.

18. At the instant the movement commences, the sergeants will move rapidly to the right of the *left group* of fours in their respective platoons, to conduct them, placing themseives abreast with the front rank; when the second group from the left shall arrive on a line with and twenty paces from the first; it will march straight forward, keeping constantly on the same alignment, and twenty paces from that group; the third and all the others will conform to what has just been prescribed for the second, all arriving on the line successively, the right guide of the company with the last group.

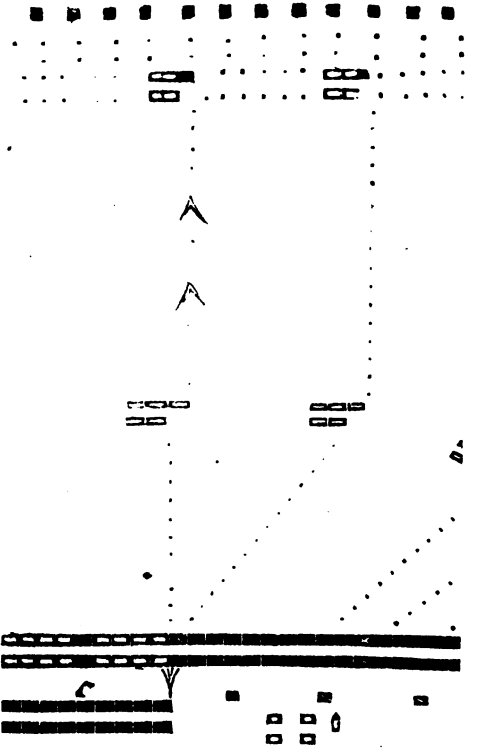
19. The left guide having reached the point where the left of the line should rest, the captain will command:

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. HALT.

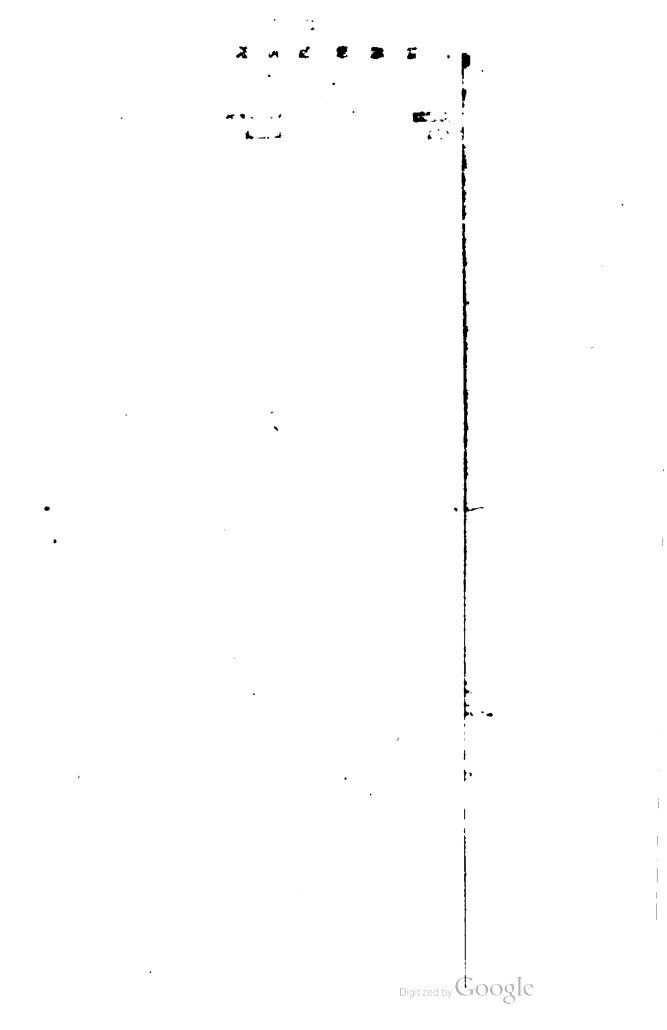
20. At the command *halt* the lieutenants and sergeants in charge of each group will stand fast; the men will deploy in double quick time at four paces from each other, to the left, No. 1 of the front rank placing himself four paces on the left of the officer or sergeant, and No. 2 twelve paces, the rear rank men placing themselves four paces on the left of their file leaders, and on the same line. If any groups be not in

Digitized by Google

Fig. 7.



Digitized by Google


Digitized by Google

line at the command *halt*, they will move up briskly, conforming to what has just been prescribed.

21. The deployment being executed, the lieutenants, sergeants and men will instantly take the position of *ready, kneeling*, as prescribed in the school of platoon, No. 155 and facing the front.

22. The captain will give a general superintendance to the whole deployment, and then place himself about forty paces in rear of the centre of the line, he having with him a bugler, and the men detached as a guard.

23. As soon as the skirmish line is extended, the 1st lieutenant will march the reserve by the shortest route to a point about one hundred paces in rear of its centre, then conform to all the movements of the line.

24. Skirmishers will be particulary instructed to take advantage of any cover which the ground may offer, and should lie flat on the ground when ever such a movement will protect them from the fire of the enemy alignments always yielding to this important advantage.

25. Deployments may be made on the right, or on the right or left of the centre platoon, upon the same principles, and by the same commands, substituting the indication *right* (*or left*) of centre platoon, for that of left file.

26. In whatever manner the deployment may be made, the men in each group of fours will always deploy at four paces from each other, and upon the officer or sergeant on the right of the front rank of each group. The deployments by groups will habitually be made at twenty paces interval; if a greater or less interval be required, it will be indicated in the command.

27. When a company thrown out as skirmishers is so near the main body, as to render a reserve unnecessary the entire company will be extended, in the same manner, and according to the same principles, as for the deployment of three platoons. In this case the captain will move about twenty paces to the right of the centre and about forty paces to the rear of the line, having with him a bugler, and the men indicated in No. 11; the first lieutenant will place himself equi-distant between the captain and the left file, and about thirty paces in rear of the line, he having with him the guard indicated No. 11, will if necessary repeat commands from the captain and generally superintend the movements of the left wing of the skirmishers.

Digitized by Google

To Deploy by a Flank.

28. The company being at a halt, when the captain shall wish to deploy it by a flank, holding the first two platoons in reserve, he will command:

(Fig. 8.) 1. *Three left platoons as Skirmishers.* 2. *By the right flank take intervals.* 3. MARCH, (*or double quick*) MARCH.

29. At the second command, the lieutenants and sergeants of the platoons designated will move briskly to the front and place themselves one pace in advance of the right file of their respective groups, the captain will indicate to the chief of the third platoon the point on which he wishes him to direct his march; the 1st lieutenant placing himself in front of the first and second platoons, will execute what is prescribed in Nos. 15 and 16.

30. At the word *march*, all except the left group will face to the right and commence the movement, the officers and sergeants placing themselves abreast with the right file of their respective groups, will conduct them to the right, the left group will stand fast until the second group from the left has halted, when it will deploy to the left as indicated in No. 20, the second group will halt at twenty paces from the one on the left, the third at twenty paces from the second and so on to the right; as each group halts they will face to the front, (the officers and sergeants briskly placing themselves on the right) and deploy as has been already explained.

31. The chiefs of groups will pay particular attention to the deployments of their respective groups, and will be instructed to judge distances by the eye without counting steps, thus rectifying any errors that may be committed.

32. As soon as the movement commences, the 1st lieutenant will face the reserve *about* and march to the rear, as indicated in No. 23.

33. The deployment may be made by the left flank, according to the same principles, substituting *left flank* for *right flank* in the commands.

34. If the captain should wish to deploy the company upon the right or left group of the centre platoon, he will command:

1. *Such platoons (or company) as skirmishers.* 2. *On right (or left) group of third platoon take intervals.* 3. *By the right and left flanks.* 4. MARCH.

35. At the third command the officers and sergeants will conform to what is prescribed in No. 29, except that those on the left of the group designated will

Digitized by Google

Fig. 8.

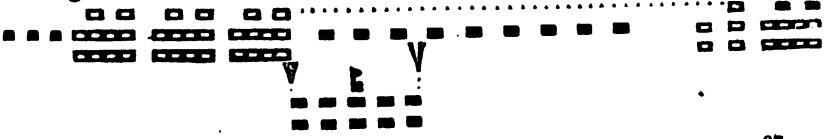
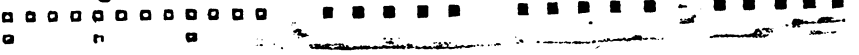


Fig. 9.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

place themselves in front of the left file, and if there is a reserve the 1st lieutenant will execute what is prescribed in Nos. 15 and 16.

36. At the fourth command the group designated will stand fast, but will deploy as soon as there is room on its left; all on the right of this group will face to the right, and those on the left will face to the left, the two wings will move off in opposite directions, the two groups nearest that which stands fast will halt at twenty paces from this group, all the others halting at twenty paces from the group in their rear, and each deploying as indicated in Nos. 20 and 21.

37. The entire company may be deployed upon the same principles, and upon any named group whatsoever.

To extend intervals.

38. This movement, to extend a line of skirmishers, will be executed on the principles prescribed for deployments. If the line be at a halt, and the captain should wish to extend interval to the left he will command:

(Fig. 9.) *By the left flank (so many paces) extend intervals.* 2. MARCH.

39. At the command *march*, the right group will stand fast, all the others will face to the left, and each group will extend its interval, to the specified distance indicated in the commands, by the principles prescribed in No. 30; the men of the same group preserving between each other, the distance of four paces, unless the advantages of the ground should make it necessary to close nearer. The intervals refer to the space between the groups, and not between men of the same group.

40. If the line of skirmishers should be marching to the front, and the captain wishing to extend it to the right, he will command:

1. *On left group (so many paces) extend intervals.* 2. MARCH.

41. At the word *march*, the left group will continue straight forward, conducted by its sergeant, all the other groups will throw forward the left shoulder, and taking the double quick step will extend their intervals, to the specified distance and then move straight forward.

42. Intervals may be extended from the centre group or from any designated group, upon the same principles.

Digitized by Google

To Close Intervals.

43. If a line of skirmishers be at a halt, should the captain wish to close intervals to the left he will command:

1. *By the left flank* (*so many paces*) *close intervals.*
2. MARCH.

44. At the command *march*, the left group will stand fast, the others will face to the left, and close to the prescribed distance, facing to the front as they successively attain the distance indicated.

45. If the line be marching to the front, the intervals may be closed upon the same principles prescribed for extending intervals in No. 40 and following, only by inverse means, substituting *close* for that of *extend*, in the commands.

46. When intervals are to be closed in order to reinforce a line of skirmishers, so as to cause two companies to occupy the same ground previously occupied by one; the new company will deploy, so as to finish its movement at about twenty paces in rear of the right or left of the old company, the men of the new company will successively move upon the line as they shall be unmasked by the men of the old company; the reserves of the two companies uniting behind the centre of the line.

Manner of relieving a company deployed as skirmishers.

47. When a company of skirmishers is to be relieved, its captain will be advised of the intention; the new company will execute its deployment, finishing its movement at about twenty paces in rear of the line.

48. At this distance the men of the new company will advance in double quick time, by command of its captain a few paces beyond the old line and halt; the new line being formed, the old company will assemble on its reserve, observing not to get into groups of fours until beyond the fire of the enemy.

49. If the company to be relieved be marching in retreat, the company relieving them will deploy by a flank, as prescribed in No. 28 and following; the old skirmishers will continue to retire in order, and having passed the new line, will assemble upon their reserve.

To advance and retreat in line.

50. When a company deployed as skirmishers is marching to the front, the guide will be habitually in the centre, without any particular command being given to that effect, but if the guide should be on

Digitized by Google

either flank, the command *guide right (or left,)* will be given after that of forward.

51. To cause a line of skirmishers to advance the captain commands:

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.

52. This command will, if necessary be repeated by all the chiefs of platoons with the greatest promptitude, when the line will move to the front; the guide charged with the direction will move on the point indicated to him; the men will hold themselves aligned on this guide, and preserve their distances towards him. To arrest the march the captain commands:

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. HALT.

53. At this command the line will instantly halt, and take the position indicated in No. 21. The chiefs of platoons will promptly rectify any errors in the alignment, and after taking every possible advantage the ground may offer for protecting the men, will resume their places in line.

54. To march in retreat the captain will command:

1. *Skirmishers in retreat.* 2. MARCH.

55. At the command *march*, the skirmishers will individually face about, and march to the rear, conforming to the same principles prescribed for marching to the front, officers and sergeants using every possible exertion to preserve order, and prevent skirmishers from closing their distances or intervals.

56. To halt the skirmishers while marching in retreat the captain commands:

1. *Skirmishers.* 2. HALT.

57. At this command the skirmishers will immediately halt and face to the front, chiefs of platoons conforming to what is indicated in No. 53.

To Change Direction.

58. If the captain should wish to change direction, he will command:

1. *Skirmishers, right (or left) wheel.* 2. MARCH.

59. At the command *march*, the right (or left) guide will mark time in his place, the left (or right) guide will move in a circle to the right (or left) and regulate his movements by casting his eyes along the line, so as to observe their direction, and the nature of the ground to be passed over, skirmishers will regulate their gait and the length of step by their distance from the pivot, often looking to the marching flank so as to preserve direction and intervals.

Digitized by Google

60. When the wheel is completed the captain will add:

3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide right (or centre.)*

61. A line of skirmishers marching in retreat will change direction by the same commands, and according to the same principles.

To march by a flank.

62. The march by a flank will be conducted upon the same principles, and by the same commands as the march by a flank in closed files; except that the skirmishers will preserve their distances and groups their intervals.

63. The men will be instructed to understand that the signals, or command, *forward* means that they shall march on the enemy. *In retreat*, that they will retire by facing about, and, *by the right* or *left flank*, that they must face to the right or left, whatever may be their positions.

64. Should it be necessary to change direction while marching by a flank, the change will be made by file; the captain commanding *file right (or left)* MARCH, which will be conducted as indicated in school of the company, for the change of direction in closed files, skirmishers always observing to preserve their distances.

65. The reserve will conform to all the movements of the line of skirmishers, and be, habitually held at about one hundred paces in rear of its centre, always in position to second its operations.

66. When the officer in charge of the reserve shall wish it to advance he will command, *reserve, forward guide left*, MARCH. If in retreat, he will command, *reserve in retreat* MARCH, *guide right.* In this case at the word *march*, the men will all face about and march to the rear.

67. The skirmishers or reserve, when marching by a flank, or in retreat, will, at the command, *halt* promptly face the enemy; skirmishers taking the position of ready kneeling, as indicated in No. 21.

The Firings.

68. Skirmishers will fire either at a halt or marching, to cause the fire to be executed at a halt, the captain will command:

Skirmishers commence firing.

69. At this command, the men of the front rank will aim and fire, then reload their pieces rapidly and hold themselves in readiness to fire again; the rear rank men will, as soon as their right hand men (or file lea-

Digitized by Google

ders) have reloaded, aim, fire, and reload; and thus the men of each rank will continue the fire alternately, conforming to this rule, thus one or the other shall always have their pieces loaded.

70. Chiefs of platoons will see that their men do not remain after firing to reload in the same place unless protected by the nature of the ground; and will also caution them to be calm, to aim with accuracy, and endeavor to estimate correctly the distances between them and the enemy, and thus deliver their fire with greater certainty.

To Fire Marching.

71. This fire will be executed, by the same commands, as prescribed for the fire at a halt.

72. The line being on the march, at the command *commence firing*, the front rank men will halt, take the position of ready, kneeling, aim, fire and reload their pieces before moving forward; the rear rank men will select a cover ten or twelve paces in advance, and move rapidly to it, halt, take the position just indicated, select their objects, aim and fire; the front rank after reloading will move rapidly forward pass the rear rank about ten or twelve paces, select a cover, halt, fire and reload as before explained; and thus each rank will continue the fire until the command or signal to cease firing is given or sounded, when the rank in rear will finish loading and resume their place. If instead of cease firing, the command halt should be given, the rank in rear will move upon the line and continue firing, as prescribed for the fire at a halt.

73. If the line be marching in retreat at the command *commence firing*, the front rank men will halt, face the enemy, aim and fire, then move rapidly to the rear; the rear rank will continue in retreat, select a cover and halt about twelve paces beyond the ground where the front rank halted and facing the enemy will retain their fire and position, until the front rank has passed them in retreat, and had sufficient time to reload. After firing they will move rapidly to the rear, pass the front rank ten or twelve paces, select a cover, halt, and reload. The front rank after passing the rear rank ten or twelve paces will select a cover, halt, face the enemy, and conform to what has just been prescribed for the rear rank, and thus alternately until the command *cease firing*, or *halt* is given, when they will conform to what is prescribed in No. 72.

74. If the company be marching by the right flank at the command, *commence firing*, every front rank

Digitized by Google

man will face to the enemy, step one pace forward (out of the line) halt and fire; the rear rank continuing to move forward, as soon as the front rank has fired, they will place themselves behind their respective rear rank man, and reload whilst marching, when they have finished loading the rear rank men will face the enemy, step out of the line, aim and fire; then execute what has been prescribed for the front rank men, by placing themselves behind them, and thus alternately. To facilitate this movement, chiefs of platoons and sergeants will, at the command, *commence firing*, promptly place themselves abreast with the centre file of their respective groups on the reverse flank from the enemy, and two paces outside the line, and marching in this position will regulate the fire of each rank alternately, as above indicated.

75. At the command *cease firing*, officers and sergeants, and rear rank men if in front, will resume their respective places.

76. If the line be marching by the left flank, the fire will be executed according to the same principles, the rear rank commencing the fire.

77. Should a line of skirmishers be firing at a halt, at the command, *forward*, *march*, the rank whose pieces are loaded will move forward at the command; the other remaining in their positions, will finish loading, then move to the front, continuing the fire as indicated in No. 72.

78. If the command in retreat is given, when firing at a halt, advancing, or by a flank, the rank whose pieces are discharged will move to the rear; the other will remain faced to the enemy, aim and fire whilst the one in retreat is reloading, and then retire, loading as heretofore explained, and continue the fire.

79. Skirmishers will be habituated to load their pieces, whilst marching, and should be practiced to fire and load kneeling, sitting and lying, much liberty being allowed in these exercises in order that they may be executed in the manner most convenient, and with the least possible fatigue.

80. At the signal to cease firing, officers and sergeants in charge of groups will see that the order is promptly obeyed; the men who may not be loaded will reload their pieces; if the line be marching it will continue the movement, the men who happen to be in rear will briskly move to their places.

81. All officers in charge of skirmishers will watch over them, with the greatest possible vigilance, and in all the firings will see that perfect order and silence is preserved, and that the men do not wander imprudently; they will in all cases cause them to

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

take advantage promptly of any shelter that the nature of the ground may offer to protect them from the fire of the enemy. Should intervals be momentarily lost when several men near each other, find a common shelter, officers will see, on quiting such positions, that they immediately resume their intervals and places in line, and in no case allow them to crowd needlessly together, and thus expose themselves to the fire of the enemy.

The Rally.

82. Skirmishers are rallied to resist cavalry, or to oppose an enemy with better success; rallies will invariably be made in double quick time, or at a run, and with bayonets fixed; when ordered to rally the men will fix bayonets without command.

83. Should a line of skirmishers marching, or at a halt, be merely disturbed by scattered horsemen, it will not be necessary to rally on the reserve.

84. If the horsemen should advance to charge the line of skirmishers, the captain will command:

(Fig. 10.) *Rally by groups.*

85. At this command the line will halt if marching and the men of each group will rally in the following manner:—the officer or sergeant in charge of each group will stand fast; the men will face toward their respective group chiefs, and moving briskly, No. 1 of the front rank will close upon his chief and face to the front; No. 1 of the rear rank, will instantly place himself in rear of his file leader and face to the rear; No. 2 of the front rank will next come up, and place himself touching elbows with No. 1 of the front rank faced to the front; No. 2 of the rear rank will follow and take his place in rear rank, faced to the rear, the officer or sergeant will then face to, and side step about eight inches to the right, and command:

Guard against cavalry, GUARD.

86. At this command the men of each group will take the position of guard against cavalry, as indicated in school of the platoon, No. 96. The right feet of the men in each group will be brought together for mutual support, and in this position they will load and fire as occasion may offer, without moving their feet.

87. The captain and 1st lieutenant if the whole company is deployed will cause the men constituting their guard to form a square, or a compact circle around them according to circumstances; if there be a reserve they will form a square if necessary.

Digitized by Google

88. If the captain should judge the squares too weak and still wishing to hold his position by strengthening his line, he will command:

(Fig. 11.) *Rally by Platoons.*

89. At this command, the officer and sergeant of each group, belonging to the same platoon, will promptly repeat the command, and lead off by files from the right of groups diagonally to the rear, so as to meet each other at a point about ten paces in rear of the line; the officer, on arriving within two paces of his sergeant, will break by file to the right, and then describe a complete circle to the left, followed by the men of his group, in one rank; the sergeant will unite with the last file of this group and, followed by the men of his own group, will continue the march in the circle; the officer, on arriving upon the same ground where he broke by file to the right, will promptly command: HALT. *Guard against cavalry.* GUARD; when the men will close into a compact circle and take the position indicated, facing outwards.

90. The captain will move rapidly where his services may be most needed. The officers and sergeants will observe that the rally is made in silence and with promptitude. If the reserve be threatened, it will form a square, or circle, around its chief.

91. To rally on the reserve, the captain will command:

(Fig. 12.) *Rally on Reserve.*

92. At this command the captain will move rapidly on the reserve; the 1st lieut. will immediately cause the reserve to form the front of a circle, and take the position of ready; the skirmishers of each platoon moving rapidly, will direct their march on the reserve, taking care to close in groups as they arrive near; then complete the formation of the circle commenced by the reserve, forming the first front, closing in rapidly, without any regard to their particular places in line; the circle being formed, the men will face outward at the command *halt*, and take the position of ready.

93. When a whole company is deployed as skirmishers, the captain may cause it to rally by company, by the command or signal:

Rally by Company.

94. At this command they will habitually rally on the centre platoon, (unless the captain should designate some particular platoon in his command,) and into a compact circle in two ranks, facing outward

Digitized by Google

upon the same principles as prescribed for the rally on the reserve. To again form line, the captain commands:

Reduce—Circle.

95. At this command, chiefs of platoons will reform their men on the right and left of the centre platoon, in their respective places. Should the command *as skirmishers* MARCH be given, they will immediately deploy by the right and left flanks, upon the same line previously occupied; on the contrary, at the command *halt*, the company will be aligned by the 1st lieutenant, and may be put in march in column by platoon or otherwise, and return to the main body, in quick or double quick time.

96. If while deployed as skirmishers the captain should find it necessary to rally on the regiment, he will command:

Rally on the Regiment.

97. At this command the skirmishers of each platoon and the reserve will unmask the front of the regiment and direct themselves by files in double quick time towards its nearest flank, and form in its rear; after forming, it will place itself on the right or left of the regiment, according as it may be a right or left flank company; but if not a flank company, it will not resume its place in line unless by direct order from the commanding officer.

The Assembly.

98. A line of skirmishers will assemble on its reserve when there is no longer danger from the enemy. To effect which, the captain commands:

Assemble on the Reserve.

99. At this command the reserve will be formed in the precise order in which it stood before the deployment. The skirmishers will assemble by groups of fours, and direct themselves on the reserve in quick time; on arriving, each group will resume its particular place in line. The company being thus formed, will rejoin their regiment.

100. Skirmishers may be assembled on the centre, or upon the right or left group of the line, either marching or at a halt; for this purpose, when the line is marching, the captain will command:

Assemble on right group of third platoon.

101. At this the chief of third platoon will continue to march straight forward. All the skirmishers on

Digitized by Google

the right of the group designated will throw forward the right shoulder, and moving in double quick time, will close on this group, forming in two ranks as they successively arrive, and then move straight forward in quick time; and in like manner, all those on the left of this particular group, will throw forward the outer shoulder, and close to the right, moving diagonally towards the guide. At the instant the groups close, the sergeants will move briskly to their respective places, on the right of their platoons, in the rear rank.

102. To assemble on the right or left, files will be executed in the same manner; also the assembly, while marching in retreat, except that the front rank men will form and march in rear of the rear rank men, and when the company is halted it will face to the front. To assemble a line of skirmishers at a halt, and on the same line they occupy, the captain will give the same commands; the men will face towards the point designated, reform groups while marching, and thus arrive on the file that served as the point of formation, the sergeants observing what is prescribed in the preceding section.

To Deploy a Regiment as Skirmishers.

103. The regiment being in line of battle, and supposed to contain ten companies, should its commandant wish to deploy it on the right of the seventh company, holding the two right companies in reserve, he will signify his intention to the lieutenant-colonel, and through his aide to the major commanding the companies designed for the reserve, indicating to the lieutenant-colonel, at the same time, the direction he wishes to give to the line, also the point where the right of the seventh company will rest when deployed.

104. The lieutenant-colonel will then move rapidly, and place himself about ten paces in front of the right guide of the seventh company, and indicate to him the point on which he is to direct his march, and to the chief of that company the direction to be given the line. The colonel will then command:

(Fig. 13.) 1. *Regiment as Skirmishers.* 2. *On right of Seventh Company, take intervals.* 3. MARCH.

105. At the second command, majors will indicate to their captains to detach the two left (or right) platoons of their companies as a reserve for each battalion; the major of the two right companies and the first lieutenant will promptly execute what is prescribed in Nos. 15 and 16; the second battalion and the

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

right company of the third will face to the right by command of their respective chiefs; at the same time the fifth battalion and the left company of the fourth will face to the left.

106. At the command *march*, the movement will commence by the seventh and sixth companies, deploying forward; the seventh on its right file; the sixth on its left file; the right guide of the seventh marching on the point indicated to him by the lieutenant-colonel.

107. The companies that have faced right and left will move off in that direction; the fifth company will take an interval of one hundred and twenty paces, counting from the left file of the sixth, when its chief will deploy it forward on its left file; the fourth and third companies will each take an interval of one hundred and twenty paces, counting from the left file of the company immediately in its rear, when each will deploy forward on its left file.

108. The guides who conduct the groups on which the the deployment is made, will direct their march about twenty paces to the right of the right files of the companies already deployed, thus allowing for the deployment of their respective groups on their left.

109. The eighth, ninth and tenth companies will each take an interval of one hundred and twenty paces, counting from the right file of the company immediately next, on its right, when their chiefs will deploy forward on the right file of their respective companies; the guides of these companies will direct their march on the outer file of the company already deployed. Each company as they successively arrive will align themselves on those already formed.

110. The reserves of each battalion will unite in rear of the center of their respective battalions and be established as *echelons*, in respect to each other; that is the reserve of the fourth battalion, will take post about one hundred and fifty paces in rear of the left file of the seventh company; that of the third, one hundred and forty, and that of the second, one hundred and thirty paces in rear of the centre of their respective battalions; that of the fifth at one hundred and sixty paces in rear of the centre of that battalion, the reserves thus united will be formed as a company, and commanded by the senior 1st lieutenant.

111. The major commanding the regimental reserve on receiving orders to that effect, ploys his battalion into column by company at half distance, and then conducts it by the shortest route to the position indicated by the commanding officer.

112. The colonel, superintends the general deploy-

Digitized by Google

ment and when completed, will move to a point, where his view may best embrace all the parts in order to direct their movements, being attended by the lieutenent-colonel, aide-de-camp, and one or two buglers.

113. The majors, after superintending the deployment of their respective battalions, will place themselves about eighty paces in rear of their centre, at, tended by their battalion adjutants and one bugler, whose duty will be to repeat signals, when necessary, from the commanding officer; the music and color without its guard, will be detached and left behind with the regimental reserve.

114. If instead of deploying forward it should be desired to deploy by the flank, the seventh and sixth companies will be moved forward ten or twelve paces, halted, and then deployed by the flank, the seventh on its right and the sixth on its left file; each of the other companies will be marched by the flank, and as soon as the last file of the company next towards the direction has taken its interval, it will be moved upon the line established by the seventh and sixth, halted and deployed upon the same principles.

115. The regiment being in column, by companies or battalions, will be deployed as skirmishers, by the same commands and on the same principles; the sixth and seventh, or the companies charged with the direction, moving forward ten or twelve paces, then deploying either forward or by a flank.

116. Reserves are placed in echelons, in order that they may, in the event of a rally, protect themselves without the danger of injuring each other. And battalion reserves are united to diminish the number of echelons.

117. The colonel will cause a single battalion to deploy as skirmishers, on the same principles. In this case, the regiment being in line, he will command:

1. *First (or such) Battalion—as skirmishers.* 2. *On right (or such) file—take intervals.* 3. MARCH.

118. At the first command the major of the battalion indicated in the command will promptly direct his captains to detach the two left (or right) platoons as a reserve from their companies; the 1st lieutenants briskly executing what is prescribed in Nos. 15 and 16, at the same time the lieutenant-colonel will indicate to the directing guide the point where the right (or left) of the line is to rest when deployed.

119. At the command *march,* the major will move his battalion forward ten or twelve paces, then command:

1. *Battalion on right (or left) file of first company—take interval.* 2. MARCH.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

120. At this command the right company will deploy forward, its directing guide moving on the point indicated by the lieutenant-colonel; the left company will (if the first company deploys on its right file) face by the left flank and take an interval of one hundred and twenty paces from the right guide of the first, then face by the right flank and deploy forward on its right file; if the right company deploys forward on its left file, the left company will deploy forward at the same time, on its right file.

121. The reserved as soon as the movement commences will unite in rear of the battalion, and under the direction of the senior lieutenant will follow the movement of the skirmishers holding themselves at about one hundred and fifty paces in rear of their centre.

122. If the regiment should be in column by company, or battalion, right or left in front; the colonel may deploy the advance battalion forward on its centre file or by its right and left flanks, on the same principles.

123. From the foregoing examples rules may be taken for all cases, whether by company, battalion, regiment or brigades. In regimental or battalion skirmishing, the extent of ground occupied by each company is second at one hundred and twenty paces; this interval is intended for three platoons only; the two remaining platoons being detached as a reserve, should the entire companies of a battalion be deployed, the extent of ground thus occupied by each company will be two hundred paces.

(Fig. 14.) *The Rally.*

124. The colonel may cause all the various movements prescribed for the company to be executed by the battalion and regiment, by the same commands, and according to the same principles. When he may wish to rally the regiment he will cause the *rally on the regiment*, to be sounded, and place the reserves in opposition to protect this movement.

125. The battalions deployed as skirmishers, at this signal will rally in squares, in their respective reserves; each battalion reserve will join the first front of the square, its chief throwing a platoon perpendicular to the rear from each flank, as a basis. The skirmishers will form themselves rapidly into groups on their officers and sergeants and then direct themselves on their respective reserves in double quick time diagonally towards each other so as to unite by platoon with the greatest possible rapidity while marching; the platoons of the right company will di-

Digitized by Google

rect themselves on the right flank, and those of the left company on the left flank of their respective reserves, in this manner the third and second platoons of right company and first and second of left will arrive first and form the the central fronts, and the first platoon of the right, and third of the left company will form the fourth front; the major and captains will superintend the rally, and as each platoon arrives will assign them their positions and cause them to face outwards.

126. The rally being effected the majors will profit by any interval of time the enemy may allow, for putting his battalion in safety, either in marching upon the regimental reserve, or by seizing an advantageous position for this purpose the squares may be removed by the right, left, first or fourth fronts, the major commands: *by such front*, MARCH; when the men will all face the direction given, the designated front and move off together in a square.

127. If instead, the major should wish to break into close column by platoons double, and march to the rear, he will command:

1. *On fourth front into column at half distance.* 2. *By platoons doubled.* 3. MARCH.

128. At the first command the captains will briskly pass out and place themselves in front of their respective platoons, comprising the fourth front, the fourth front will stand fast, the three platoons, comprising the right front, will face to the right, those composing the left will face left, and those comprising the first will face about, by command of the chiefs of platoons.

129. At the command *march*, the fourth front will move straight forward; the platoons of the right front will break by files to the right, and those of the left front by files to the left and move on a line meeting each other; on arriving within one pace of each other the chiefs of all the platoons of the right front, will command, *by the right flank, march*, and at the same time chiefs of the left front will command, *by the right flank, march*, when they will unite in the centre and move off in the direction of the fourth front, as soon as the two rear platoons of the right and left fronts have united, those of the first front, will move forward in the trace of the fourth.

130. If in marching in this manner it should become necessary to form a square, the major will command:

Form Square, MARCH.

131. At the command *march*, the fourth front will halt, the platoons of the right and left fronts will

Digitized by Google

wheel left and right upon their former lines; those of the first front will close up, halt and face about. As the officers pass inside, the major may command, *guard against cavalry, guard*, and if necessary cause the front threatened, to fire by rank with the front rank kneeling.

132. The battalion being again put in march on arriving near the regimental reserve will re-form in its rear without regard to its number or designations, but take positions in rear of the battalions already formed.

MANUAL OF THE SABRE FOR OFFICERS.

To Draw Sabre.

Two Motions.

Fig. 1.

1. (*Fig.* 1.) (1st.) Turn the head slightly to the left, without deranging the position of the body, seize the gripe with the right hand, and draw the blade about six inches out of the scabbard, pressing at the same time the scabbard against the left thigh, with the left hand, which seizes it at the upper ring.

2. (2d.) Draw the sabre briskly by extending the right arm fully; carry the blade the back against the hollow of the right shoulder, the wrist resting against the right hip, the little finger outside the gripe, the arm slightly bent.

Present Sabre.

One Motion.

3. (*Fig.* 2.) Carry the sabre before the centre of the body, the arm half extended, the point elevated; the blade perpendicular and between the eyes, the guard at the hight of the shoulder, and about six inches from the chin, the edge to the left, the thumb extended on the right side of the gripe, the little finger by the side of the others.

Digitized by Google

To Carry Sabre.

One Motion.

4. (*Fig* 3.) **Carry the sabre to the** right shoulder, the edge to the front, the back resting against the hollow of the shoulder, the right hand against the hip, the little finger outside the gripe.

Fig. 2.

To Salute with the Sabre.

Three Motions.

5. (1st.) At the distance of six paces from the personage to be saluted, bring the sabre to present.

6. (2d.) Drop the point of the sabre to the ground by extending the right arm, at the same time turn the edge to the right, and bring the right hand against the right thigh, the back of the hand to the front, and remain in this position until the person to whom the salute is rendered shall have passed, or shall be passed six paces.

Fig. 3.

7. (3d.) Raise the sabre smartly and resume the carry.

8. In a salute of the line, tendered the commandant and upon similar occasions, officers will execute the first and second motions, and remain in that position until the salute is acknowledged by the touch of the hat or cap, when they will promptly take the position of *carry sabre*.

Inspection of the sabre.

Three Motions.

9. (1st.) The sabre being at a carry, each officer at the instant that the inspector arrives in front of him, will bring his sabre to a present.

Digitized by Google

10. (2d.) Turn the wrist inwards to show the other side of the blade, and back to a present.
11. (3d.) Retake the position of *carry sabre.*

Return Sabre.
Two Motions.

12. (1st.) Bring the sabre to a present.
13. (2d.) Carry the wrist opposite to and six inches from the left shoulder, lower the blade and, pass it across and along the left arm, the point to the rear; turn the head slightly to the left and fix the eyes on the opening in the scabbard, return the blade, turn the head to the front, and drop the hands.

COLOR SALUTE.

1. In the ranks the color bearer, either at a halt or in march, will carry the heel of the color-lance supported in a boot at the right hip, the right hand habitually at the hight of the shoulder on the lance to hold it steady.

To Salute.

2. Slip the right hand along the lance to the hight of the eye, seize it with the left near the heel, raise it out of the boot and bring it before the centre of the body, then with both hands drop the point forward to an angle of about forty-five degrees from the perpendicular and wave the color from right to left, and again from left to right.
3. The salute being ended, replace the lance in the boot, drop the left hand by the side, and slip the right down to the hight of the shoulder.

INSTRUCTION FOR CHIEF OF MUSIC.

The music of a regiment is composed of one fifer and one drummer to each company, and one bass drummer to each battalion; they are enrolled in the companies, and subject to duty on all occasions where their respective companies are called into requisition.
2. To the "Chief of Music" will be assigned their instruction in all the beats and signals pertaining to active service, and maneuvre; he will make selection of suitable persons to fill all vacancies that may occur, assign them to companies, and generally to have the entire control of all the musicians and instru-

Digitized by Google

ments belonging to the regiment; he will also have the selecting and purchase of requisite amount of instruments for his regiment, and be required to keep the same in constant repair; to this end he will draw upon the several companies for all necessary funds, and will make report of all his receipts and disbursements to his regimental commandant annually.

3. When a regiment assembles for parade, the music will first report to their respective companies, then conform to what is prescribed in school of battalion No. 3, and regimental evolutions No. 6 and 13. After being massed, should the regiment be put into column for maneuvre, the music will be conducted in silence to their position, as indicated *basis of instruction*, and will habitually hold themselves on that flank, observing strictly *to play only while the regiment is on the march.* The chief of music may adopt such signals as will enable him to move *forward* to the *rear*, or by *either flank* in lieu of the tardiness of wheeling.

SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

1. The following examples are drawn up for the formation and maneuvre of a separate battalion while acting as isolated.

Manner of Forming the Battalion in Line.

2. The battalion being assembled for parade, the adjutant on intimation to that effect from the major will cause the assembly to be beat or sounded, when each company will be formed and the roll called, as prescribed in the school of the company.

3. The companies being formed, the adjutant will cause the music of each company to unite, then post them on the line in two ranks faced to the front, and about four paces to the right of the ground to be occupied by the right guide of the battalion; he will then move briskly on the line to a point where the left of the first company will rest when formed, halt, face about, and align himself on the front rank of the music, then facing to them will take the position of *present sabre.*

4. At the instant the adjutant takes this position the music will play and the first company be put in march by the right flank; if the company should be in front of the line thus marked, the captain will direct the march around the left, passing in rear of the adjutant, then move parallel to the line; if in rear

Digitized by Google

of the line, he will direct the march on the adjutant and when within four paces will break by files to the right.

5. When the right guide of the company arrives at about four paces from the music, the captain will command:

1. *Company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

6. At the instant the company faces to the front, the captain and *left guide* will each move upon the line; the captain at the point where the right of his company is to rest, faced to the left, the *left guide* on the line faced to the front, and touching lightly the breast of the adjutant with his left arm, they being assured in their positions by the adjutant, the captain will add:

4. *Company.* 5. *Left*—DRESS. 6. FRONT. 7. *Order*—ARMS.

7. At the command *front*, the adjutant will face about and move briskly on the line to a point where the left of the second company should rest, halt, face about and align himself on the front rank of the company already formed; at the last command the captain and 1st lieutenant will take post as in *line.*

8. The second company will approach the line as prescribed in No. 4 and be halted and faced to the front when its right guide is nearly abreast with the left file of the first company; at the command *front*, the *right guide* will place himself upon the line touching elbows with the left guide of the first company, the captain will move in rear of the adjutant, face to the line and add:

Company Right—DRESS. FRONT. *Order*—ARMS.

9. The last command being executed, the captain and 1st lieutenant will take post as in *line;* the adjutant will move briskly to the right flank of the battalion and three or four paces in advance of the right guide, then facing the line will command:

1. *Attention Battalion.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *To the rear Open Order.* 4. MARCH.

10. At the third command the 1st lieutenants will move briskly around the outer flanks of their respective companies and step off four paces to the rear, counting from the front rank, then facing each other will thus mark the alignment for the rear rank.

11. At the command *march*, the rear rank will step off smartly to the rear, pass a little the markers, halt, without command, and be aligned by the lieutenant of the first company on that of the second, by the

Digitized by Google

command *left*—DRESS; the rank being aligned, he will add FRONT, and each resume their places in line.

12. The adjutant seeing the last movement executed will march along the front to the centre, face the line and command, *battalion, present*—ARMS, then facing about to the major, who is eight or ten paces in front, will salute (the captains and 1st lieutenants facing to the front and saluting at the same time) and report, "*the battalion is formed.*" The major will acknowledge the salute by touching his hat or cap when the officers will bring their sabres to a carry and remain faced to the front; the adjutant on intimation to that effect will take his post as in line.

13. The major after drawing his sabre will command: 1. *Attention Battalion.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS; at the first command captains and 1st lieutenants will promptly face the line, when the major will add such other manual exercises as he may think proper, concluding with *order*—ARMS, REST.

14. At the command *rest*, captains and 1st lieutenants will promptly face to the front, take the position of *rest* and await further orders, and on the contrary on a caution from the major for any particular movement they will instantly face to their men and observe its execution. To close the ranks the major will command:

1. ATTENTION *Battalion.* 2. *Rear rank Close Order.* 3. MARCH.

15. At the command *march* the rear rank will close to its prescribed distance, each man covering accurately his file leader.

16. The major wishing to execute the firings will cause the officers to take posts as in line of battle, for this purpose he will command:

1. *Officers posts in rear.* 2. MARCH.

17. At this command the major and officers in front will promptly take post as in "*line of battle*" passing around the outer flanks of their companies.

18. The music, if on the flank, will *face about* and march eight or ten paces to the rear, then face to the right and passing in the rear of the line will halt opposite the left file of the right company, and face to the front; the major will then command:

1. *Battalion load at will.* 2. LOAD.

19. The major will next cause to be executed the fire by company, the fire by battalion, the fire by file and the fire by rank.

Digitized by Google

20. The fire by file will always be direct; the fire by company, by rank or by battalion may either be direct or oblique; when the firings are to be oblique the major will give the caution at every round, *right* (or left)—*oblique*, before that of *aim*.

21. The fire by company will be executed alternately by the right and left companies; the right company will fire first; the captain of the left will not give his commands until he shall see two or three pieces in the right at a *ready;* the captain of the first, after the first discharge will observe the same rule in regard to the second, and thus alternately.

22. The fire by file will commence on the right of each company at once and be executed as indicated in school of the company, No. 33, and following.

23. To cause the fire by company to be executed the major will command:

1. *Fire by company.* 2. *Commence Firing.*

24. At the second command the captain of the first company will cause the firing to commence by the commands:

1. *First company* (*or company A*). 2. *Ready.* 3. *Aim.* 4. *Fire.* 5. *Load.*

25. The captain of the second company on seeing two or three pieces in the right company at a *ready* will cause his company to fire by the same commands, observing to precede the command, *company* by that (of *second, or company B,*) and thus the firing will continue until the command or signal to *cease firing*, is given, when the men of each company will execute what is prescribed in school of the platoon No. 131.

26. To cause the fire by battalion the major will command:

1. *Fire by battalion.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

27. To fire by file the major will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. *Commence Firing.*

28. At the fourth command the firing will commence on the right of each company as prescribed in school of the company, No. 33 and following.

29. To cause the fire by rank the major will command:

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear rank.* 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.

30. This fire will be executed on the same principles

Digitized by Google

prescribed in school of the company, No. 38 and following.

31. When the major shall wish the battalion to fire to the rear he will command:

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About*—FACE.

32. At the first command the officers and music will pass briskly around the flanks and place themselves before the front rank, faced to the rear, each opposite to his place in line of battle; at the third the battalion will face about.

33. The battalion having faced about the major will cause all the firings to be executed by the same commands as if faced by the front rank.

34. The companies "though faced about" will preserve their former letters or designation as *first* and *second* company.

35. The fire by file will commence on the left of each company, now become the right, and the fire by rank by the front, now become the rear, the ranks preserving their denominations.

36. To resume its proper front the major will command.

1. *Face by the front rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About*—FACE.

37. At this the battalion will resume its proper front, the officers and music passing to their proper places in line of battle.

38. The major in order not to fatigue the men will occasionally cause arms to be ordered, and command: *Battalion*—REST; then resume their proper positions, he will command: *Attention* BATTALION and proceed with the exercises.

Different modes of passing from Line into Column.

39. The battalion being in line or line of battle they will habitually break into column by company; they may also break by platoon, and in either case right or left in front. In the following exercises the battalion will be supposed in line, with the music eight or ten paces in rear of the centre of the battalion.

40. To break by company to the right, the major will command:

1. *By company, right wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. (*or double quick* MARCH.

41. At the first command the 1st lieutenants, will promptly place themselves without the point where the left of their respective companies will rest when the wheel is completed to mark the line, observing to

Digitized by Google

place themselves on a supposed line drawn between the heels of the right guide and those of the sergeant, covering him.

42. At the command *march*, each company will wheel to the right, upon the principles prescribed for the wheel from a halt; when the left guide who conducts the marching flank arrives near the 1st lieutenant, captains will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT.

43. At the second command, the company will halt; the left guide will promptly place himself on the alignment faced to the front, and touching lightly the right breast of the lieutenant with his left elbow, the captain will observe that there is only sufficient room between the right and left guides to contain the intermediate files and then add:

3. *Left*—DRESS. 4. FRONT.

44. A battalion in line may break into column by platoons, on the principles prescribed in school of the company, No. 106 and following. It may also break by company or platoons to the left according to the same principles and by inverse means.

45. The music will conform to the direction and movements of the battalion, holding itself unless in passing defiles, or in column in route at from four to ten paces in rear of centre, according to the extent of front occupied by the battalion in column.

46. The major will not be required in seperate battalion evolutions to have any fixed place, but will move where his services are most needed.

47. If the major should wish to move the column forward after wheeling without causing it to halt, he will caution the battalion to that effect, and then command:

1. *By company, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

48. At the second command the music will play and the companies will wheel to the right on fixed pivots, when the marching flanks arrive near the perpendicular, the major will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide Left.* 5. MARCH.

49. At the fourth command the left guide of the leading company will instantly take points of direction, aided by the battalion adjutant; at the fifth, given at the instant the first company has completed the wheel, the company will move straight forward, the men touching elbows to the left; the guide of the first marching on the points indicated, and the guide of the second following in his trace.

Digitized by Google

To break to the rear by the right or left into column and to advance or retire by the right or left of companies.

50. The major wishing to break by the right to the rear into column by company, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.* 2. MARCH, (*or double quick* MARCH.)

51. At the first command the captains will command: 1. *Such company.* 2. *Right*—FACE, and move briskly to the right of his company, placing his breast lightly against the left arm of the left guide of the company next on the right of his own.

52. At the word *march* each captain will command: *file* RIGHT, when the first file of each company will wheel to the right and march perpendicular to the rear. The other files coming up successively to wheel on the same spot.

53. The captains will stand fast, see their companies file past, and at the instant the last file shall have wheeled, each captain will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Left*—DRESS.

54. At the instant the company faces to the front, its left guide will place himself so that his left arm may touch lightly the right breast of the captain.

55. At the fourth the company will align itself on its left guide, the captain so directing it that the new line may be perpendicular to the old one.

56. The battalion being in line and marching to the front, the major wishing to break into column by company to the rear by the right, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.* 2. MARCH.

57. At the first command the captains will instantly give the caution: *Such company. By the right flank. File right,* and move briskly to the right of their companies; at the word *march,* each company will face to the right, then move off by files to the rear; the captains will stand fast, and as the last file of their companies arrives abreast with them each will command: *By the left flank guide left*—MARCH, when each company will face to the left and move off in column.

58. To break to the rear by the left the major will give the same commands, substituting *left* for *right,* the movements will be executed on the same principles, and by inverse means.

59. The battalion being in line and at a halt, if the major should wish to advance or retire by the right of companies, he will command.

Digitized by Google

1. *By the right of companies to the front (or rear).* 2. MARCH.

60. At the first command the captains will instantly command: 1. *Such company.* 2. *Right* FACE, and move briskly to the right of their companies. At the command *march*, each captain will add: *file left*, and placing himself on the left of his leading guide will conduct his company perpendicularly to the front.

61. As soon as the movement commences the major will command: *guide right (or left)* when the guides will dress to the right or left according to the indication given, observing to preserve accurately his distance.

62. If the battalion be in march and the major should wish to advance or retire by the right of companies, he will give the same commands prescribed in No. 59. In this case at the first command the captains will each command: 1. *Such company.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. *File left (or right, if to the rear)*, and at the word MARCH, place themselves on the left of their leading guides and conduct their companies to the front (or rear).

63. To advance or retire by the left of companies the movements will be executed by the same means and commands substituting *left* for *right*.

64. Should the major wish to advance or retire by platoon from the right of companies the line being at a halt, he will command:

1. *By platoons from the right of companies.* 2. *To the front.* 3. MARCH.

65. At the first command the chiefs of *first* platoon in each company will caution their platoons to stand fast. The captain will face to the line and command: 1. *Such company.* 2. *Right*—FACE, when all except the first platoon will face to the right.

66. At the word *march*, the first platoon in each company will move straight forward, the platoons that have faced to the right will move off in that direction and when the chief of the second platoon arrives near the trace of the first he will command: 1. *Second platoon, by the left flank*—MARCH, when the men of this platoon will face to the left and move forward, following the first; the third platoon will come up and break to the left on the same ground and so on from right to left.

67. If the battalion be in march and the major should wish to advance by platoons from the right of companies he will give the same commands prescribed in No. 64. The captains at the first command will each instantly command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Such company by the right flank.* 2. *Platoons break to left.*

68. At the word *march*, given by the major the first platoon in each company will move straight forward, the others having faced by the right flank at the command march, will move forward and break to the left successively upon the same ground the first platoon occupied, then follow in the trace of the first.

69. If the battalion be advancing by the right or left of companies by file or by platoons, to form line to the front the major will command:

1. *By companies into line.* 2. MARCH.

70. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will form into line; as prescribed in school of the company No. 95, and following.

71. If the battalion be retiring by the right of companies and the major should wish to form line facing the front, he will first cause the companies to face about while marching and form line by the same commands and means prescribed in No. 69, and following.

72. The major will cause the foregoing movements to be executed in double quick time, by preceding the command *march*, with that of *double quick*.

To ploy the battalion into close column by companies.

73. To ploy the battalion into column by company right in front, the major will command:

1. *Close column by companies at half distance, right in front.* 2. MARCH.

74. At the first command, the captain of the first company will caution it to stand fast; the captain of the second will command: 1. *Second company.* 2. *Right*—FACE, then hastening to the right of his company will break two files to the rear.

75. At the word march, the second company will step off briskly by file to the rear, and on gaining a distance equal to half its breadth, the captain will command: 1. *file left*, and halting himself, at the point where his company wheels by files to the left, and as the last file wheels he will add: 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *left* DRESS.

76. At the third, the left guide will place himself promptly on the direction, and at a distance equal to half the breadth of the company, in rear of the left guide of the first, being corrected in this position by the 1st lieutenant. At the fourth, the company will

Digitized by Google

align themselves on this guide as heretofore explained.

77. To ploy the battalion into column in front of the first company, the major will give the same commands, substituting *left* for that of *right* in *front*. In this case, the captain of the second company will cause files to break to the front, and then file right, and form his company in front of the first, on the same principles and at the same distance.

78. To ploy the battalion into column on left company, right or left in front will be executed on the same principles and by inverse means.

To march in Column at full distance.

79. The battalion being in column, by company at full distance, if the major should wish to put it in march, he will indicate to the leading guide two distinct objects in front, on the line which the guides ought to follow, the guide placing his shoulders in a square with that line, will take the most distant object as the point of direction, and the other as an intermediate point.

80. These dispositions being made, the major will command:

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH.

81. At the command *march* the column will step off, conforming to what is prescribed in school of the company, No. 111 and following, the leading guide always maintaining himself in the direction, by marching steadily on the two points indicated.

82. The guide of the rear company will be responsible for both step and distance, marching in the trace of the first.

83. The battalion being in march, the major will cause the *about* to be executed while marching; to this effect he will command:

1. *Battalion Right-about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

84. At the command march, the companies will face to the right-about in marching, and the column will then move forward in the opposite direction; the captains and 1st lieutenants will remain behind the front rank.

85. When the major shall wish to march by the front rank, he will give the same commands prescribed in No. 83, substituting *guide left* for that of *guide right*. He will also exercise the battalion in marching by the flank, while in column by companies, which will be conducted on the same principles as prescribed for the advance or retire, by the right or left of companies.

Digitized by Google

To change direction in column at full distance.

86. The battalion being in column at full distance, and marching in the cadenced step, if the major should wish to change direction, he will cause the adjutant to establish himself as a marker, at the point where the change ought to commence, presenting his breast to the marching flank of the column; the adjutant, no matter to which side the change of direction is to be made, will take post on the opposite side, remaining there until the last subdivision has marched past him. The leading subdivision being within a few paces of the marker, the major will command:

Change direction to the left (or right.)

87. At this, the captain of the leading company, if the change is to the left, will command: *guide right.* The right guide will then direct himself so as to graze the breast of the marker with his right arm, and on arriving near this marker, the captain will command: *such company left wheel,* MARCH. At the word march, given at the instant that the guide is abreast with the marker, the company wheels to the left, on the principles prescribed for the wheel on the march. The wheel being completed, the captain will command: *guide left, forward,* that is, if the guide was left previous to commencing the change of direction.

88. The chief of the next company will execute what has just been prescribed for the first.

89. In a column of several battalions, the adjutant of the first will be replaced by the adjutant of the second battalion, as soon as the last subdivision of his battalion has passed, and thus from front to rear.

90. If the change of direction is to be made to the right, each captain will command: *guide left,* (provided the guide is not already there,) and after the wheel is completed, *guide right, forward.*

91. The column being in march, if the major should wish to halt it, he will command:

1. *Column.* 2. HALT.

92. At the second command, briskly repeated by the captains, the column will halt, the men themselves rectifying their positions in the ranks, the guides will stand fast, though they may have lost direction or distance.

93. The major, wishing to form line, will execute what is prescribed in school of the company, No. 140, and then command:

Digitized by Google

1. *By companies left into line wheel.* 2. MARCH.

94. At the first command, each captain will caution his company to wheel to the left. At the word *march* the companies will wheel to the left, as prescribed for the wheel from a halt; the captains, when the marching flanks of their companies arrives within three paces of the perpendicular, will command:

1. *Such Company.* 2. HALT.

95. The adjutant will take the position prescribed for the 1st lieutenant, school of the company, No. 142, and at the instant the companies halt, the right guide of each will place himself upon the line, and be corrected by the adjutant; he will then command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Right* DRESS. 3. FRONT

96. At the second command, the men of each company will align themselves to the right on their guides. At the third, they will turn their heads to the *front*, and the officers resume their places in line.

97. The major will exercise the battalion in all the different formations prescribed in the school of the company, both in quick and double quick time, together with the rules for skirmishing, the principles and commands are the same, simply substituting in the commands *battalion* for that of *company*, and *company* for that of *platoons*.

98. The adjutant will execute what is prescribed for the 1st lieutenants, except in skirmishing. The captains in columns of companies, will repeat all the commands prescribed for chiefs of platoons, when in column by platoons, substituting in the commands *company* for that of *platoon*, and in marching in column by platoon, will have a general superintendence over all the movements of their company.

99. Captains will not repeat the commands *march* and *halt* only in cases of changing direction, and in different formations, where these commands will apply to their companies individually, unless the major should be at too great a distance to be heard distinctly.

100. The men will consequently be instructed, in moving from a halt, that at the command *march*, given by the major, to all step off at once, and at the command *halt*, to stop short on the advanced foot and bring up the other by the side of it.

The change of direction in column at half distance.

101. A column at half distance being in march, will change direction by the same commands and means

Digitized by Google

prescribed for a column at full distance; but as the distance between companies is less, the pivot man will take steps of fourteen inches instead of nine, and seventeen inches instead of eleven, according to the gait, in order to clear the wheeling point; accordingly the marching flank will describe the arc of a larger circle, in order to facilitate this movement.

Deployment of a column at half distance.

102. The column being at a halt right in front, and closed to half distance, should the major wish to deploy the column on the right company, he will command:

1. *On the first company deploy column.* 2. MARCH.

103. At the first command the adjutant will move briskly on the line, to a little beyond where the left of the second company will rest as a marker. The captain of the first company will caution his company to stand fast. The captain of the second company will command: 1. *Second company left* FACE, and place himself by the side of his left guide.

104. At the command *march*, the chief of the right company will command: 1. *First company.* 2. *Right dress.* 3. FRONT. The left company will be put in march, the left guide conducting it parallelly to the line; the captain will stand fast and see the company file past, and when its right guide shall be abreast with him he will command: HALT. FRONT. FORWARD. *Guide right,* MARCH; then placing himself in front of the company will halt it four paces in rear of the line, and align it on the right company.

105. To deploy column on rear company, the principles are the same, the major substituting in the command *second* (*or rear*) for that of *first company.*

106. In this case the rear company will stand fast; the adjutant will mark the point where the right of the line is to rest; the first company will face to the right, the captain placing himself abreast with the right guide; his company will then file past him and when the left guide is abreast with him, he will command: HALT. *Right*—FACE. *Forward*—MARCH; when the company will face to the right, and after passing the line three or four paces, he will command:

1. *Company* HALT. 2. *About* FACE. 3. *Left* DRESS.

107. At the second command the company will face about, then at the third will align themselves to the left on the rear company.

108. After the battalion is sufficiently established in the above movements, they will execute them with-

Digitized by Google

out halting, that is the captain of the left company, instead of *halt, front*, and then *forward*, will command: *By the right flank, march*, and the captain of the first, instead of *halting* and facing to the right, will command: *By the right flank*, and after passing the line three or four paces, add:

Right—ABOUT. HALT. *Left*—DRESS.

REGIMENTAL EVOLUTIONS.

Manner of forming a regiment in line.

1. On occasions of general or regimental parade, the regiment will be formed in line in the following manner:

2. Thirty minutes before the line should be formed the aide-de-camp (who is herein charged with the duties of regimental adjutant) will cause the "*assembly*" to be sounded, when each company will be formed upon its own ground, and roll called, as prescribed in school of the company.

3. The adjutants will then promptly form their respective battalions as indicated in school of the battalion, No. 3 and following.

4. At the same time that the battalions are forming, the aide-de-camp will select the ground where the regiment is to form in line, and cause "*to the color*" to be sounded.

5. At this signal the lieutenant-colonel, aide-de-camp and chief of music will move briskly upon the line, and take post as follows: The lieutenant-colonel with sabre at a carry, on the line, faced to the front, and four paces to the right of the ground to be occupied by the right file of the first battalion; the aide-de-camp on the line about where the left of the first battalion will rest when formed, and facing to the lieutenant-colonel; the chief of music on the line faced to the front, and ten paces to the right of the lieutenant-colonel, each with sabre at carry.

6. As soon as the sound *to the color* has ceased, the majors will put their respective battalions in march by the right flank, or in column by platoons right in front, and headed by their music, will direct their march in rear and opposite to their places in line, each will successively halt opposite their places in line, and face to the front, and observe that they are as in *echellon* in respect to each other, from right to left; that is, the first battalion will halt opposite to, and four paces in rear of the ground it is to occupy when

Digitized by Google

in line, the second halting opposite to, and eight paces in rear, and thus from right to left.

7. The first battalion after halting and facing to the front by command of its chief, the right and left guides will move briskly upon the line, and be corrected in their position by the aide-de-camp, the major will place himself on the line on the right of the right guide, and command:

1. *First battalion.* 2. *Right*—DRESS.

8. At the second command the battalion will move forward by files from the right, and place themselves on the alignment between the right and left guides, dressing to the right; the alignment being executed he will next add: 3. FRONT. 4. *Order*—ARMS; when the battalion and company officers will take post as in line.

9. As soon as the aide-de-camp has established the right and left guides of the first battalion, he will face about, and briskly move on the line, halt and face about at the point where the left of the second battalion is to rest, will await the arrival of this battalion and correct the position of its markers, and thus from right to left.

10. The aide-de-camp having taken this position the major of the second battalion will command:

1. *Second battalion, forward.* 2. *Guide right.* 3. MARCH.

11. At the command *march*, the battalion will move forward, its right guide directing himself on a point, four paces to the left of the last file of the battalion already formed; on arriving within four paces, the major will command: HALT; at this the battalion will halt, and the right and left guides will move on the line as prescribed for the guides of the first battalion; the adjutant will observe that the right guide is at exactly four paces from the left file of the battalion on his right; the major will then command, and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for the first battalion, from this position, after which the officers will take their positions as in line.

12. The chiefs of the remaining battalions will successively cause to be executed what has been prescribed for the second; each moving upon the line as soon as that which preceded it has halted.

13. The music of each battalion will remain at their head and play only when their battalions are in march, and as their respective battalions are halted within four paces of the ground they are to occupy in line, they will cease playing, face by the right flank; the music of the first will place themselves on the left

Digitized by Google

of the chief of music; that of the second and remaining battalions after facing by the right flank, will march in silence in rear of the battalions already formed, to the position occupied by the chief of music, who will as they successively arrive cause them to form in three ranks and faced to the front, the entire music of the regiment being consolidated, the chief will take his post three paces in front of their centre, and in line with the company officers.

14. The extreme left battalion having formed on the line, the aide-de-camp will remain on its left flank, the colonel will take his post in front and the surgeon in the rear; the lieutenant-colonel will move four paces to the front, face the line and command: 1. *Attention regiment.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS, and correct the alignment if necessary, then march along the front to the centre, face to the right and pass the line of majors six or eight paces, halt, face about, and add: 3. *Order*—ARMS. 4. *Parade*—REST. 5. *Music*—BEAT OFF, when it will commence on the right, move ten paces forward, wheel to the left and beat along the line from right to left in *common time*, then facing about, will beat from left back to its place on the right, in *quick time.*

15. The music having ceased, the lieutenant-colonel will command:

1. *Regiment*—ATTENTION. 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *To the rear, open order.* 4. MARCH.

16. At the first command, majors and company officers will face about to the line; at the third, 1st lieutenants will promptly execute what is prescribed in school of the battalion No. 10, except that they will face to the front and be corrected in their positions by the aide-de-camp; at the fourth, the rear rank will step off smartly to the rear, pass the line of markers, halt without command and be aligned by the aide-de-camp.

17. The aide-de-camp on seeing this rank aligned will command: FRONT; he will then quit the left flank, move twelve paces forward, face to the right, march along the line to the centre of the left wing, halt and face to the front; the surgeon and other staff officers, whose positions have not been prescribed) will close to thirty paces in rear of the centre, the 1st lieutenants will move to their posts in line.

18. The instant these officers take their posts, the lieutenant colonel will command: *Present*—ARMS, when the line will present arms, officers facing about and saluting; seeing this executed he will face about to the commanding officer, salute and report "*the regiment is formed.*"

Digitized by Google

19. The colonel having acknowledged the salute of the line the officers will, bring their sabres to a carry and the lieutenant-colonel on intimation will take post as in line.

20. The colonel after saluting, will draw his sabre, and command:

1. *Regiment.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *Rear rank close order.* 4. MARCH.

21. At the first command the officers will face about to the line; at the fourth the rear rank will close on the front rank, to the prescribed distance, each man covering accurately his file leader.

22. The ranks being closed the colonel may cause the manual of arms to be executed, ending with order arms.

23. The colonel may next cause loading at will, and the firings to be executed, for this purpose he will command:

1. *Officers, post in rear.* 2. MARCH,

24. At this command the officers will execute what is prescribed in school of battalion, No. 17, except that the colonel, and field officers will pass through the intervals between the battalions; the music will promptly take post as in line.

25. The fire by company, and the fire by file will always be direct; the fire by battalion, by wing, by regiment and by rank, may be either direct or oblique, when the firing is to be oblique the colonel will give the caution, *right or left oblique*, at every round before that of *aim*.

26. The fire by company will be executed alternately by the right and left companies of each battalion as if the battalion were alone, conforming to what is prescribed in school of the battalion, No 21.

27. The fire by battalion will be executed by the odd and even numbered battalions alternately; the odd numbered will fire first; the majors of the even numbered will not give their first commands until they see two or three pieces in the odd numbered at a ready; the majors of the odd numbered battalions will, after the first discharge, observe the same rule in regard to the even numbered.

28. The fire by file, will commence on the right of all the companies at once, and will be executed as prescribed in school of the company, No. 35.

29. The color guard will not fire, but reserve itself for the defence of the color.

Digitized by Google

The Fire by Company.

30. To cause the fire by company to be executed, the colonel will command:

1. *Fire by Company.* 2. *Commence Firing.*

31. At the second command the captains of the odd numbered companies will commence the fire by the commands prescribed in school of battalion, No. 24; the captains of the even numbered companies will give in their turn the same commands, conforming to what is prescribed in school of the battalion, No. 25.

32. When the colonel shall wish to execute the fire by battalions, he will give the same commands, observing to substitute battalion for company.

33. In this case the majors of the odd numbered battalions will commence the fire, by the same commands prescribed in school of the battalion, No. 24, except that they will substitute *battalion* for that of *company;* the majors of the even numbered battalions will in their turn give the same commands; and thus the fire will continue until the signal or command to *cease firing* is given, when each will execute what is indicated in school of the platoon, No. 146.

34. To cause the fire by wing the colonel will command:

1. *Fire by wing.* 2. *Right wing.* 3. READY. 4. AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD..

35. This fire will be executed alternately by the wings.

The fire by regiment.

36. This will be executed by the commands last prescribed, substituting for the first two: 1. *Fire by regiment.* 2. *Regiment.*

The fire by file.

37. To cause this to be executed the colonel will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Regiment.* 3. READY. 4. *Commence firing.*

38. At the fourth command, the fire will commence on the right of each company, as prescribed in school of the company, No. 35.

The fire by rank.

39. To cause the fire by rank to be executed the colonel will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Regiment.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear rank.* 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.

40. This fire will be executed as explained in school of the company No. 38 and following; the colonel will observe the progression prescribed for the two ranks, which should fire alternately.

To fire by the rear rank.

41. When the colonel may wish to cause the regiment to fire to the rear, he will command:

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Regiment.* 3. *About*—FACE.

42. At the first command the officers and music will all briskly pass through the intervals and place themselves before the front rank and faced to the rear, each opposite his place in line of battle; at the third the regiment will face about, when the colonel may cause the different firings to be executed, by the same commands as if faced by the front rank.

43. The companies, battalions and wings, though faced about will preserve their former designations, as first, second or third companies or battalions, and *right* and *left* wings.

44. The fire by file will commence on the left of each company, now become the right, and the fire by rank by the front rank, now become the rear, the ranks preserving their denominations.

45. To resume the proper front the colonel will command:

1. *Face by the front rank.* 2, *Regiment.* 3. *About*—FACE. 4. *Officers and Music.* 5. *Posts in line.* 6. MARCH.

46. At the third command, the regiment will face to the front; at the sixth, the surgeon and such officers as are not will briskly resume their relative positions in line; the music passing through an interval will briskly take position as indicated in No. 24.

47. The music on occasions of maneuvres, when the regiment is first formed, should the colonel wish, instead of executing the different firings, to put the regiment in march; the chief of music at the first preparatory commands will instantly face the music about, and marching in quick time, will promptly take post as in line, then conform to the movement of the regiment, holding themselves always at about fifteen paces in rear or to the right or left of their positions, whether the regiment is in march to the front, or in column right or left in front.

Movements from line.

48. The regiment being in line, will habitually break

Digitized by Google

into column by company; it may also break by platoons or battalion upon the same principles.

49. To break into column by company to the right, the colonel will command:

(Fig. 17.) 1. *By companies, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

50. At the first command the captains will face about to their companies and briskly caution it to wheel to the right; the 1st lieutenants will promptly place themselves on the line where the left of their companies will rest after the wheel is completed, and facing to the right guide of the company, will thus mark the line, observing to place themselves exactly on the prolongation of a supposed line drawn between the heels of the right guide and the sergeant covering him.

51. At the command *march*, each company will wheel to the right according to the principles prescribed for the wheel from a halt; when the left guide, who conducts the marching flank, shall arrive within three paces of the 1st lieutenant, the captain will command:

1. *First (or such) company.* 2. HALT. 3. *Left*—DRESS. 4. FRONT.

52. At the second command the company will halt, the left guide will instantly move upon the line faced to the front, and place himself, touching lightly the right breast of the lieutenant with his left arm.

53. The captain will observe that there is only sufficient room between the right and left guides to contain the intermediate files, and at the third command the company will promptly align themselves on the left guide.

54. The majors will give a general observance to the wheelings of their respective battalions, correcting any errors that may occur, but will not repeat the commands unless the colonel should be at too great a distance to be distinctly heard by the captains.

55. The regiment may break into column by battalions on the same commands, the colonel substituting in the command battalion for that of company.

56. In this case the adjutant will mark the point where the left of the battalion is to rest, and the wheel will be conducted by the major, who will observe what is prescribed for the captains when breaking into column by company.

57. To break into column by platoons, the principles prescribed in school of the company, No. 107 and following, will be observed.

58. The line may be broken into column by platoon,

Digitized by Google

company or battalion left in front, on the same principles, and by the same commands, substituting *left* for *right*.

59. When a regiment breaks by battalion to the right, and there is an odd company, the captain of this company; after wheeling will cause it to oblique to the left, halt it at company distance from the preceding battalion place his left guide on the direction of the column, and align his company to the left; should the line break to the left, this odd company will be in front, in this case the captain will cause it to oblique to the right, halt it at battalion distance from the battalion immediately in its rear, place his right guide on the direction of the other guides, and align his company to the right.

60. Should the colonel wish to move the column forward after wheeling, without halting, he will caution the regiment to this effect, and command:

1. *By companies, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

61. At the first command the captains will execute what is prescribed in No. 50; at the second the music will play, and the companies will wheel to the right on fixed pivots; when the left guides arrive near the perpendicular the colonel will add:

3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide left.* 5. MARCH.

62. At the fourth command the guide of the leading company will instantly take points of direction, indicated to him by the lieutenant-colonel; at the fifth, given at the instant the wheel is completed, the companies will cease to wheel and march straight forward, touching elbows to the left, the guide of the leading company marching on the points indicated, and the guides of the others following directly in his trace.

To break by the right or left to the rear into column.

63. To break to the rear by the right into column by companies, the colonel will command:

(Fig. 18.) 1. *By the right of companies, to the rear into column.* 2. MARCH.

64. This will be executed as prescribed in school of the battalion, No. 51 and following; the majors will observe that the captains align their companies on a line perpendicular to the one just occupied.

65. To break to the rear into column while on the march to the front, the colonel will give the same commands; the captains will command and cause to

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

P 103

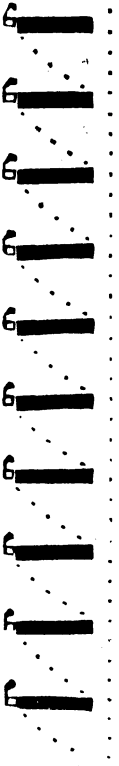


Fig. 17.

P 104

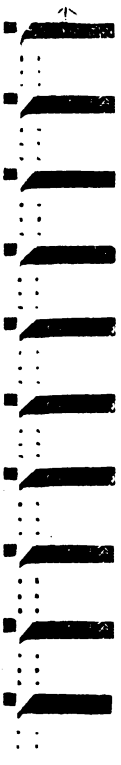


Fig. 18.

Digitized by Google

be executed what is indicated in school of the battalion, No. 57.

66. To break to the rear into column by battalions, right in front, the colonel will indicate in the commands: *By the right of battalions* instead of *companies*; the majors will each command, and cause to be executed what has been prescribed for the captains.

67. To break to the rear into column left in front, the colonel will command:

1. *By the left of companies (or battalions) to the rear into column.* 2. MARCH.

68. This will be executed on the same principles, and by inverse means; the captains (or majors) commanding, *left face, file*—LEFT, and move briskly to the left of their companies (or battalions) then after the last file has wheeled, add:

HALT. FRONT. *Right*—DRESS. FRONT.

To advance or retire by the right or left of companies or battalions.

69. The regiment being in line, and at a halt, should the colonel wish to advance or retire by the right of companies he will give the same commands prescribed in school of the battalion, No. 59, the captains observing what is indicated in school of the battalion, No. 60.

70. As soon as the movement is executed the colonel will command: *guide left*, (*right*) *or* (*centre*), when the leading guides will conform to the direction indicated.

71. Should the colonel wish to advance by the right of battalions he will substitute in the commands *battalions* for that of *companies;* the majors will command and cause to be executed what has been prescribed for the captains in advancing by the right of companies.

72. To advance or retire by the right or left of companies or battalions, while marching, the same commands and principles prescribed in school of the battalion, No. 62 and following, will be observed.

73. To re-form line, either advancing or retiring, the colonel will observe the principles, and give the same commands indicated in school of the battalion, No. 69 and following.

To ploy the regiment into column in mass.

74. This movement will be executed either by company or battalion, on the right or left company or battalion, or on any intermediate company or battalion, right or left in front.

Digitized by Google

75. To ploy the regiment into column in mass by battalion, in rear of the first, the colonel will command:

(Fig. 19.) 1. *Column in mass by battalions right in front.* 2. *On first battalion into column.* 3. MARCH.

76 At the second command, the majors will all face to the line; that of the first will caution his battalion to stand fast; the chiefs of all the others will promptly command: 1. *Such battalion.* 2. *Right*—FACE, then moving to the right flank of his battalion, will break two files to the rear; the first will break the whole depth of the two ranks; the second less.

77. At the third command, the chief of the first battalion will command: 1. *First battalion.* 2. *Left*—DRESS, at this the left guide will place himself on the direction indicated by the lieutenant-colonel, and this battalion will align itself to the left, when the major will add: FRONT, and the officers will resume their places as in line.

78. All the other battalions, at the command march, each conducted by its major, will step off together to take their places in column; the first will gain in wheeling by files to the rear, the space of ten paces, which should separate its guide from the guide of the first battalion, so that when the column is formed the battalions will be separated eight paces; the chief of this battalion on arriving on the direction of the left guide of the first, will himself halt, cause his battalion to file left past him; the guide will direct his course parallel to first battalion, when the last file has made the wheel to the left, the major will command:

1. *Second battalion.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Left*—DRESS.

79. At the third command the battalion will face to the left, the left guide will promptly place himself on the direction and ten paces in the rear of the left guide of the first; the adjutant will place himself a like distance in rear of the right guide and face to the left.

80. At the fourth the battalion will align itself on the left guide as heretofore explained, when the major will add: FRONT, and the officers will resume their posts as in line.

81. The third, fourth and fifth battalions will direct themselves diagonally towards, but a little in rear of the points at which they are to enter the column; at about six paces from the left flank of the column, the head of each will incline a little to the left in order to enter the column parallel, observing to leave a dis-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

tance of ten paces between its guide and that of the guide of the preceding battalion.

82. Each chief on arriving on the direction of the guides will himself halt, allow his battalion to file past him, then command and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for the chief of the second.

83. The chiefs of battalions will place themselves two paces outside of the left guide to direct the alignment, that he may better observe that his battalion may be parallel to that which preceeds him, which being done he will add FRONT and place himself before the centre of his battalion.

84. If after the command *front* any battalion should not have its proper distance, which will only happen through the negligence of its chief, such battalion will remain in its place, in order that his fault may not be propagated to others.

85. The colonel will superintend the movement, and will observe that the majors promptly command and cause to be executed the prescribed principles.

86. The lieutenant-colonel placing himself in succession in rear of the left guides of the right wing, will assure them on the direction as they arrive, and then move to his post six paces outside the left flank of the centre of this wing; the aide-de-camp will in like manner assure the guides of the left wing on the direction, and then move to his position six paces outside the left flank of the centre of this wing. In assuring the guides on the direction, they will merely act as observers, unless one or more should fail to cover accurately the guides of the preceding battalions.

87. To ploy the regiment in front of the first battalion the colonel will give the same commands, substituting *left* for that of *right* in front. (Fig. 20.)

88. At the second command the chiefs of battalions will conform to what is prescribed in No. 76, except that the chiefs of the last four battalions will cause files to break to the front instead of to the rear.

89. At the third command the chief of the first battalion will add: *Right*—DRESS, when the right guide will place himself as prescribed in No. 77, and the battalion align itself to the right.

90. The other battalions will step off together to take their places in column in front of the directing battalion, each will direct itself as prescribed in No. 78, and will enter in such a manner that, when halted, its guide may find himself, after halting, ten paces in advance of the right guide of the battalion already established in the column.

Digitized by Google

91. Each chief of these battalions will conduct his battalion until his right guide shall be nearly on the line of direction of the guides previously established, he will then command: 1. HALT. 2. FRONT; at the instant the battalion halts the right guide will face to the rear, place himself ten paces in front of the guide of the battalion next his own, and cover him accurately, then facing about to the front, the chief will add:

3. *Right*—DRESS. 4. FRONT.

92. The lieutenant-colonel moving on the line in front of the guide of the first battalion will assure the other guides of the right wing on the direction as they successively arrive, then place himself on the right flank and six paces from the centre of the right wing, now in the rear; the aide-de-camp will assure the guides of the left wing on the direction, then place himself on the right flank opposite to, and six paces from the centre of the left wing.

93. The colonel will move forward, observing that the majors promptly cause to be executed the prescribed principles, and when the movement is completed will move to a point on the right flank where his commands may be most distinctly heard.

94. The chief and music will follow up the movement, halting on the left flank opposite to, and at the prescribed distance from the centre of the regiment, facing the direction given the column.

95. To ploy the regiment in rear or in front of the fifth battalion, the colonel will command:

1. *Column in mass by battalion left* (or right) *in front.* 2. *On fifth battalion into column.* 3. MARCH.

96. These movements will be executed on the same principles prescribed for the ployments on first battalion right (or left) in front, but by inverse means; the fifth battalion on which the regiment ploys will stand fast, and at the instant the movement commences its chief will establish the right or left guide on the direction indicated by the lieutenant-colonel, and command:

Right or left—DRESS.

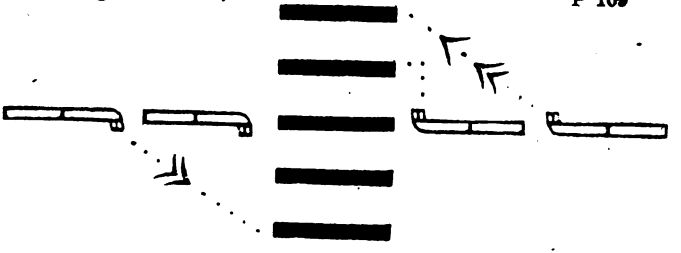
97. The preceding examples embraces all the principles necessary to complete the formation either right or left in front.

98. To ploy the regiment on an intermediate battalion, the colonel will command:

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Fig. 21.



Digitized by Google

(Fig. 21.) 1. *Column in mass by battalion, right (or left) in front.* 2. *On third (or such) battalion into column.* 3. MARCH.

99. At the instant the movement commences the chief of the directing battalion will conform to what is prescribed for the chief of directing battalion, No. 78 or 89.

100. The battalions which in the order in line are on the right of the directing battalion will, by command of their respective chiefs, face to the left; those which are on the left will face to the right, if in the indication the right is to be in front, those battalions on the right of the directing one will ploy on its front, and those on the left in rear. If the left is to be in front, the movement will be the reverse.

101. In all the ployments on an intermediate battalion when the right is to be in front, the lieutenant-colonel will assure the position of the guides in front of the directing battalion, and the aide-de-camp those in rear. When the left is to be in front, the reverse.

102. When the regiment can execute promptly, and with understanding, and the majors become familiar with their relative commands, the colonel may cause all the preceding examples to be executed in double quick time, simply adding in the caution, *double quick* before that of march, the principles are the same.

103. If the regiment be in march, those movements will be executed by a combination of quick and double quick time, and invariably in rear of a flank battalion.

104. To ploy the regiment in rear of the first battalion, while in march, the colonel will give the same commands prescribed in No. 75, the chief of first battalion will command: *first battalion, forward, guide left,* when the left guide will move on the point indicated by the lieutenant-colonel, and this battalion will continue to march straight forward in quick time.

105. At the second command the chiefs of the remaining battalions will promptly give the caution: 1. *Such battalion.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. *Double quick.*

106. At the command *march,* briskly repeated by these majors, their battalions will face to the right and move off in double quick time, breaking to the right. To take their places in column, the chiefs of battalions will move rapidly to the right of his battalion to conduct it, the adjutant moving in front of the leading guide; the files will observe to preserve accurately their distances and march with a uniform step.

107. The second battalion will immediately enter the column, marching parallel to the first; its chief will allow it to file past him, and when the last file is abreast with him he will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Second battalion by the left flank.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.*

108. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the left; at the third the left guide will march on the trace of the left guide of the first battalion, the men touching elbows to the left; the major will move briskly before the centre of his battalion, and when his left guide arrives at the prescribed distance in rear of the left guide of the first battalion, he will add: 4. *Quick time*—MARCH, at this the second battalion will change step to quick time.

109. The chiefs of the remaining battalions will conform to and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for that of the second, observing to gain as much ground as possible towards the head of the column.

110. If the regiment had been previously marching in line at double quick time, should the colonel wish to resume that gait, will, when the last, or rear, battalion has gained its distance, command:

Double quick—MARCH.

111. To ploy the regiment into column in rear of the left flank battalion, while on the march, the same principles will be observed.

112 The colonel may cause the regiment to ploy into column at full or half distance, either from a halt or while marching in line, on the same principles and by the same command, substituting for the first command:

Column at full (or half) distance by battalion.

113. To ploy the regiment into column by companies in either of the foregoing examples, the colonel will give the same commands, substituting company for that of battalion; the captains will give the commands, and cause to be executed what has been prescribed for the majors, substituting company for that of battalion, the majors will give a general superintendance to the ployments of their respective battalions, into column by company, but will give no command, unless one or both captains should fail to command, and execute promptly the prescribed principles.

114. In this movement the lieutenant-colonel and aide-de-camp will assure the guides of their respective wings on the direction as prescribed for the ployments by battalion.

To march in column at full distance.

115. The regiment being in column at full distance, either by company or battalion, right (or left) in front, the colonel will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Column forward.* 2. *Guide left (or right).* 3. MARCH.

116. At the second command the leading guide aided by the lieutenant-colonel will instantly take points on the ground in the direction the column is to move as heretofore explained.

117. At the third the column will step off together, the guides of the rear subdivisions conforming to what is prescribed in school of the company, No. 111.

118 The column being in march, the colonel will frequently cause the march by a flank to be executed, for this purpose he will command:

1. *By the right (or left) flank.* 2. MARCH.

119. At the command *march*, the column will face to the right (or left) and move off in that direction, and as soon as the men have faced, the colonel will add: 3. *Guide left, (right) or (centre)*, when the right (*or left*) guides of each subdivision will align himself on the guide indicated, and continne to march straight forward, preserving accurately his interval from the company or battalion next towards the directing guide.

120. To resume the former direction the colonel will command:

1. *By the left (or right) flank.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right (or left).*

121. To cause the column to face about while marching, the colonel will command:

1. *Regiment, right about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

122. At the second command the companies will all face to the right about, then march straight forward in an opposite direction, the chiefs of companies or battalions will remain behind the front rank; the aide-de-camp will give a point of direction to the leading guide, and the remaining guides will march in his trace.

123. The colonel will hold himself habitually on the directing flank, he will look to the step and observe that all the principles prescribed for the march in column in school of the company are complied with; the lieutenant-colonel will remain abreast with the centre of the right wing now in rear, the aid-de-camp after giving a point of direction to the leading guide, will place himself abreast with the centre of the left wing, now in front.

124. To resume the march by the front rank, the colonel will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Regiment right about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.*

125. This will be executed on the same principles indicated in No. 122, as soon as the companies have faced about, the lieutenant-colonel will give a point of direction to the leading guide and then resume his place opposite the centre of the right wing.

126. The column by company being in march, the colonel will cause it to diminish front by platoons, from front to rear, by the principle indicated in No. 162 and following, in school of the company.

127. To increase front he will command: *form companies (or battalions)* as the case may be, which will be executed by the same command and means indicated in school of the company, No. 166.

128. The column by company right in front being in march, should the colonel wish to change direction to the right and break into column by platoons, at the same time, for the purpose of passing a defile he will command:

1. *Head of column.* 2. *By platoons break to the right.* 3. MARCH.

129. At the command *march*, the leading company by command of its chief, will wheel by platoons to the right, and move forward in this direction, the remaining companies will continue to march straight forward, and as they successively arrive near the ground where the first company broke into column by platoons, their chiefs will command: *by platoons, right wheel;* then add: *guide left, forward,* and move off in the trace of the preceding platoons.

130. At the instant the movement commences the lieutenant-colonel will mark the ground where the leading company wheels, and each company will come up successively to break to the right on the same ground.

131. The regiment being in column by platoon and in march, the colonel may cause it to change direction to the left and form company at the same time by the command:

1. *Head of column.* 2. *By companies break to the left.* 3. MARCH.

132. At the second command the chief of the leading company will briskly give the caution: *such company by platoons, left wheel;* at the word *march* all the platoons of this company will wheel left into line, and as the wheel is nearly completed the captain will add: *guide right, forward,* when this company will move direct to the front.

Digitized by Google

133. The chief of the next company will continue to march his company by platoons passing in rear of the first, and when his right guide shall arrive near the trace of the guide of the first company; he will command and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for the captain of the first, and thus from right to left.

134. The adjutant of the leading battalion will mark the point where the first company broke to the left, and remain in position until the second company of his battalion has completed the wheel by platoons, when he will be relieved by the adjutant of the next battalion, and so on from right to left.

135. As soon as the movement is executed the colonel will add: *guide left*, and move abreast with the centre of the regiment; the majors will each observe that their captains successively give their relative commands and cause to be executed the prescribed principles.

136. These movements may be executed in diminishing from column by battalion into column by company or platoons, and then break by battalions to the left, the commands and principles are the same, substituting *battalion* for that of *company*.

Column in Route.

137. A column in route, ought never to have a depth greater than the front it occupies when in line; but as a column in route may have to pass bridges or other narrow defiles, rendering it necessary to diminish the front of subdivisions, it becomes important to give rules and means by which the column may for any length of march, preserve the ease of the route step, without elongation from front to rear.

138. A column in route will be habitually formed by platoon; but while marching through an open country, or to and from parade grounds, it may be formed by company, right in front.

139. The column being by platoon (or company) and the want of space rendering a further diminution of front necessary; the chiefs of companies will successively command:

1. *By the right flank.* 2. *File left.* 3. MARCH.

140. The companies marching by a flank will pass the defile, and as soon as the breadth of the way may permit, the captains will successively command:

1. *By platoon (or company into line.)* 2. MARCH.

141. At the command *march* the subdivisions indicated will form themselves into line, and for want of

Digitized by Google

space sufficient to contain the files of a platoon (or company) those that are not able to enter will follow (by a flank) the last files of their subdivisions.

142. The column marching in this order, the files in rear will be caused to enter the line as soon as the breadth of the way may permit.

143. The leading subdivisions will follow the windings of the pass or defile; the following subdivisions will not occupy themselves with the direction, but all in succession, pass over the trace of the subdivisions which precede them.

144. Changes of direction will always be made without command, but if the change be of importance, a caution from their respective chiefs of companies, or platoons may be given.

145. To render all these movements familiar to troops and to habituate them to march in the route step without elongating the column from front to rear; commanders will occasionally conduct his regiment through narrow passes in order to make it perceive the utility of the principles prescribed above.

Remarks on the column in route.

146. The lesson relative to the column in route is by its frequent application is one of the most important that can be given to troops. If it be not well taught and established on right principles the rear of the column in route will be obliged to run to regain distances, or else the front will be forced to halt till the rear has accomplished that object; thus rendering the march much slower and more fatiguing than if it were executed according to fixed rule.

147. The ordinary progress of a column in route should be on good roads or ground at the rate of one hundred and ten steps per minute, which rate may be maintained by columns of almost any depth; but over bad roads, or mountainous districts the progress cannot be so great, and must therefore be regulated accordingly.

148. The most certain means of marching while in route, is to preserve always a regular and equal movement, and if obstacles cause one or more subdivisions to slacken or shorten the step, to cause the primitive rate of march to be resumed the moment the difficulty is passed.

149. A subdivision of a column ought never to take more than the prescribed distance from the one immediately preceding it, but it will be necessary sometimes to lessen that distance.

150. Thus the head of a column encounters an obstacle which obliges it to relax its march; all the fol-

Digitized by Google

lowing subdivisions will preserve the habitual step, and close up in mass if necessary, on the subdivision nearest the obstacle, distances will afterward naturally be regained as each subdivision shall successively pass the obstacle, yet if the obstacle be too great to be overcome by one subdivision whilst the next is closing up, so that distances cannot be recovered without running, the chief of the column will halt the leading subdivision at a distance sufficient to contain the whole column closed in mass. He will then put the column in march, the subdivisions taking distance by the head of column, observing to commence the movements, so that the last may not have to halt after clearing the obstacle.

151. Subdivisions will always step out well in obliquing, both in forming companies or platoons; when either is done in succession it is highly important that none slacken or shorten the step whilst that which preceded it is engaged in the movement; the observance of this principle can alone prevent an elongation of a column.

152. When a command has to move rapidly over a given distance, the foregoing movements will be executed in double quick time; but when the distance is great the chief of the column will observe the following rules, that is, to *march in double quick* time, ten minutes, and in quick time, (route step) five minutes, and thus alternately.

153. If the ground is uneven he will reserve the double quick for those parts of the ground most favorable to this march.

154. A column marching alternately in double quick time, and the route step, in the manner stated, can easily accomplish long distances in a very short space of time; but when the distance to be passed be not greater than one or two miles, it should be accomplished when the ground is favorable, without changing the rate of march, that is in double quick time.

To change direction in column at full distance.

155. The column being in mareh in the cadenced step, should the colonel wish to change direction to the left (or right) he will indicate his intention to the lieutenant colonel (if the right is in front) or to the aide-de-camp, (if the left is in front) who will briskly move to the point where the change is to be made, and post the adjutant of the leading battalion there as a marker presenting the breast to the flank of the column; this marker if the change is to be made to the right, will be posted on the left, outside the line of direction given by the left guides, and faced to the

Digitized by Google

direction to be given the column after the change is made, if the change is to be made to the left he will be posted on the right and faced to the left, presenting his breast to the right guides of the column.

156. The leading subdivision on arriving near this marker, the colonel will command:

(Fig. 22.) *Head of column to the left* (or right.)

157. At this the chief of the leading subdivision will briskly command: 1. *Guide right (or left)*, if the guide is not already there, this guide will direct his march so as to graze the breast of the marker, as this subdivision approaches within four paces of the marker its chief will command: 2. *Such company (or battalion) left or right wheel*, and at the instant the right (or left) guide grazes the breast of the marker he will add: 3. MARCH; when this company will wheel to the left (or right) on the principles indicated for the wheel on the march and move off in the new direction.

158. The following subdivisions will each come up to wheel on the same ground, their chiefs will command and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for the chief of the first subdivision.

159. The marker after the first or leading battalion has completed the change of direction, will be briskly relieved by the adjutant of the next battalion, immediately following his own, and in like manner so from front to rear.

160. The colonel will observe that all the principles prescribed for the change of direction in school of the company, No. 128 is complied with, the adjutant, or aide-de-camp, (according as the right or left is in front) placing himself ten or fifteen paces in front of the leading guide, after the wheel is made will indicate to him points of direction, which should be perpendicular to the course the column was marching previous to the change being made.

161. To halt the column while in march the colonel will command:

1. *Column.* 2. HALT.

162. At the second command the column will halt, and no guide will stir though he may have lost both distance and direction.

163. The column being halted, right in front, when the colonel shall wish to form it on *left into line*, he will indicate to the lieutenant-colonel to rectify the positions of the left guides, for this purpose he will move briskly ten or twelve paces in front of the leading guide and face to him; this guide and the follow-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

P 117

Fig. 22.

P 116

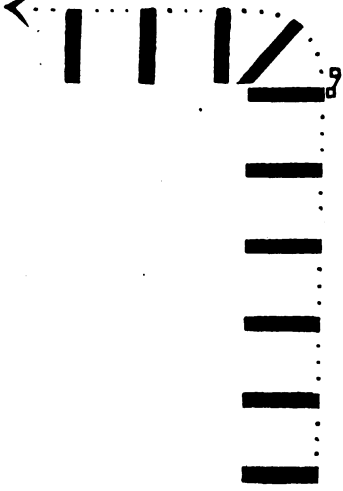


Fig. 23.

Digitized by Google

ing one will fix their eyes on the adjutant, in order to promptly conform themselves to his directions.

164. The lieutenant-colonel having placed these two guides on the direction will command: *Guides cover.*

165. At this the following guides will promptly place themselves on the direction, covering the first two in file, and each at a proper distance from the guide immediately preceding; the aide-de-camp passing rapidly in rear of the column will assure them in their positions, the captains (or majors) will then command:

Such company (or battalion) left—DRESS.

166. At this each company (or battalion) will incline to the left, and dress on its left guide; the captains (or majors) will place themselves two paces outside of his guide, previous to giving the command *left dress*, and promptly align their companies parallel to that which precedes his own, then command: FRONT.

167. This being executed, the colonel will command:

(Fig. 23.) 1. *On left into line, wheel.* 2. MARCH.

168. At the first command, each chief of subdivision will briskly give the caution, *such company left wheel, guide right.*

169. At the command *march*, each company will wheel left, on the principles prescribed for a wheel from a halt, when the marching flanks shall have arrived within three paces of the line the chiefs will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT. 3. *Right* DRESS. 4. FRONT.

170. At the command *halt*, the right guides will briskly move upon the line, being corrected in their positions by the adjutants, when each company will align itself to the right as heretofore explained.

171. A column halted left in front will be formed on *right into line* on the same principles and by inverse means.

To close the column to half distance.

172. A column by company being at full distance, at a halt and with the right in front, to cause it to close to half distance on the leading company, the colonel will command:

1. *Close column at half distance.* 2. MARCH.

173. At the first command the captain of the leading company will caution it to stand fast, and as soon as the movement commences, will align it by the left.

174. At the word *march* all the companies except the first, will march straight forward, and as each in suc-

Digitized by Google

cession arrives at a distance precisely equal to half its breadth, it will be halted by command of its chief, the left guide will place himself on the direction of the guides which precede, and the captain will align his company to the left as heretofore explained.

175. The lieutenant-colonel, a few paces in front of the leading guide, and faced to the rear, will assure the following guides as they successively arrive on the direction.

176. If the column be in march, the colonel will cause it to close by the same commands, in this case the leading company will continue to march straight forward; all the others will move in double quick time, by the command of their respective chiefs, and on gaining their distance, retake the step in quick time.

177. If the column be marching in double quick time, at the first command the captain of the leading company will command: *quick time*, all the other chiefs will caution their companies to continue their march in double quick.

178. At the command *march*, the leading company will march in quick and all the others in double quick; as each arrives at half distance from the company which precedes, its chief will command: *quick time, march.*

179. When the rear company has gained its distance the colonel will command:

Double quick—MARCH.

To Close Column on tenth or rear company.

180. The column being at a halt, should the colonel wish to close to half distance on tenth, or rear company, he will command:

1. *On tenth (or rear) company, close column at half distance.* 2. *Regiment about* FACE. 3. *Forward, guide right.* 4. MARCH.

181. At the second command all the companies except the tenth (or rear) will face about, the guides remaining in the front rank now in rear.

182. At the third all the captains will place themselves two paces outside of the directing flank of their companies.

183. At the fourth the tenth company will stand fast, its chief aligning it by the left; the other companies will put themselves in march, and as each arrives at half distance from the one established before it, its captain will halt it and face it about.

184. At the moment each company halts, the left guide remaining faced to the rear, will place himself

Digitized by Google

promptly on the direction of the guides already established and at exactly half distance, then facing about the captain will align his company by the left.

185. The aide-de-camp placing himself a few paces in rear of the left guide of the tenth company will assure the others on the direction as each company successively halts.

186. If this movement be executed in double quick time, each captain on arriving near the ground where the company is to rest, will himself halt and command:

Such company right about—HALT.

187. The column being in march, should the colonel wish to close it on the rear company, he will command:

1. *On tenth (or rear) company, close column at half distance.* 2. *Regiment right about.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide right.*

188. At the first command, the captain of the tenth company will caution it to remain faced to the front, the captains of the others will caution them to face about.

189. At the third command the captain of the tenth will halt his company and align it to the left; the captains of the other companies will at the same command, place themselves two paces outside the directing flank, their companies will all face about, and as each arrives at half distance from the company already established, its chief will command:

Such company right about—HALT.

190. The instant the company halts, the guide on the directing flank will execute what is prescribed in No. 186, and his captain will align his company by the left.

191. A column by battalion at full distance, will close to half distance, on the same principles and by the same commands, the colonel substituting *fifth* (or rear) *battalion* for that of *tenth company*, the majors will command and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for the captains.

192. A column by company or battalion being at full or half distance, may be closed in mass by the same means and commands, substituting *column, close in mass* for that of *close column at half distance;* each chief of subdivision will conform to all that has just been prescribed, except that he will not halt his subdivision until his guide shall be within eight paces from the guide next preceding.

Digitized by Google

193. In a column left in front these movements will be executed on the same principles.

To march in column at half distance, or closed in mass.

194. A column at half distance or closed in mass being at a halt, will be put in march by the colonel, by the same commands prescribed for a column at full distance, the means of direction will also be the same.

195. A column at half distance or closed in mass will be exercised in marching to the rear and by a flank, by the same commands and principles prescribed in No. 118 and following.

To change direction in column at half distance.

196. A column at half distance being in march, will change direction by the same commands and according to the same principles as a column at full distance; but as the distance between subdivisions is less, the pivot man in each subdivision will take steps of full fourteen inches instead of nine, and seventeen inches instead of eleven according to the gait, in order to clear the wheeling point, and the marching flank will describe the arc of a larger circle in order to facilitate the movement.

To change direction in column closed in mass.

197. A column by battalion closed in mass, being in march, will change direction by the front of subdivisions; the colonel after having caused a marker to be posted at the point where the change ought to commence, will command:

(Fig. 24.) 1. *Regiment right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

198. At the command *march*, the leading battalion will wheel as if it were part of a column at half distance; at the instant this battalion commences the wheel all the others will at once conform to its movement in the following manner: The left guide of each battalion advancing the left shoulder slightly, and lengthening a little the step, will incline to the left, observing at the same time to gain ground to the front, so as to keep an interval of eight paces between himself and the guide of the preceding battalion, as soon as he shall cover this guide accurately, he will cease to incline, and march in his trace.

199. Each battalion will regulate its movements by its guide; the men will feel lightly the elbow towards the guide and advance a little the left shoulder, at the moment the movement commences, each file in inclining will gain less ground as they approach the

Digitized by Google

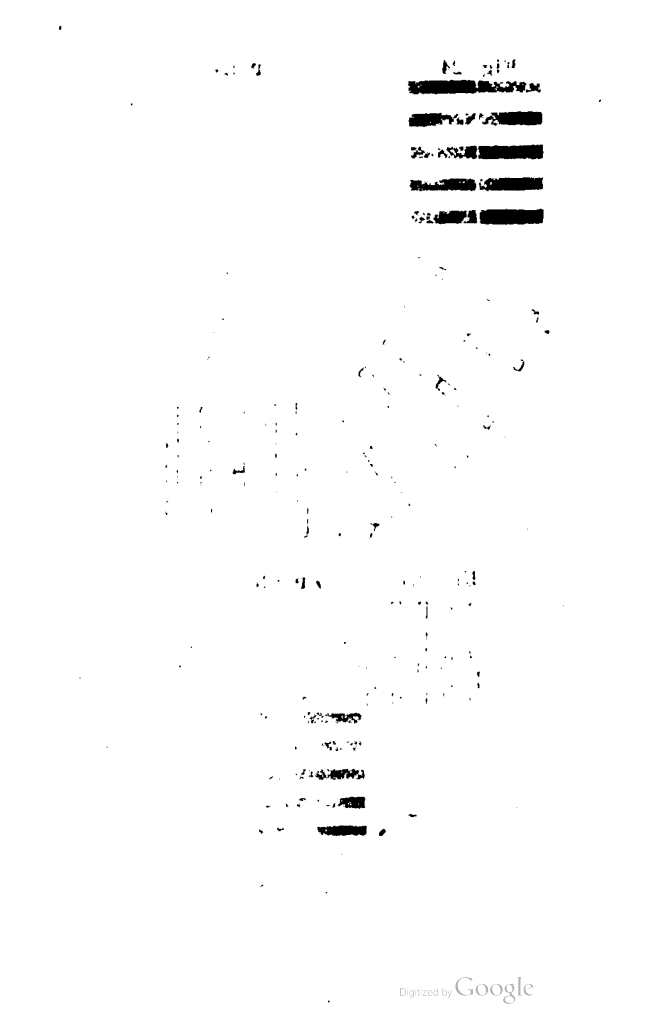

Digitized by Google

Fig. 24. P 120

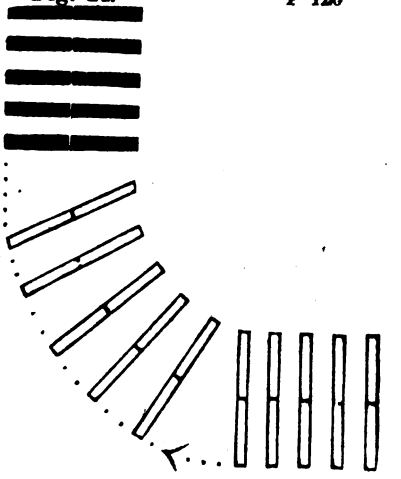
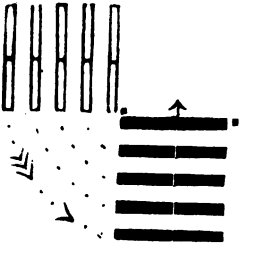


Fig. 25. P 121



Digitized by Google

pivot, and the pivot will only gain ground forward, sufficient to maintain between his own, and the preceding battalion, the same distance that separates their marching flanks.

200. The colonel seeing the wheel nearly completed will command:

1. *Guide left.* 2. FORWARD.

201. At the second command, which will be given at the instant the leading battalion has completed the wheel, it will resume the direct march, the other battalions will conform themselves to this movement, and if any guide find himself not covering his file leader he will by degrees recover or bring himself on his trace by advancing the right shoulder.

202. The column right in front will change direction to the left on the same principles, the colonel commanding:

1. *Regiment, left wheel.* 2. MARCH.

203. The column being left in front the colonel will cause it to change direction to the right, or left, by the same commands and according to the same principles.

To change direction from a halt.

204. A column by battalion closed in mass being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to give it a new direction, and in which position it is to remain, he will cause it to execute this movement by the flank of battalions, in the following manner.

205. The column having the right in front, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to change direction by the right flank, he will indicate to the lieutenant-colonel the point of direction to the right, this officer will briskly post two markers, (the adjutant of the first battalion and one 1st lieutenant) on the direction, distant from each other a little less than the front of the first battalion, the first marker (1st lieutenant) in front of the right file of this battalion, this being executed he will command:

(Fig. 25.) 1. *Change direction by the right flank.* 2. *Regiment right* FACE. 3. *Forward* MARCH.

206. At the second command the column will face to the right, and each chief of battalion will place himself by the side of his left guide.

207. At the command *march*, all the battalions will step off at once, the right guide of the leading battalion will direct himself from the first step parallelly to the markers, placed in advance on the new direction; the chief of this battalion will stand fast and see it file

Digitized by Google

past, and as soon as the left guide shall have passed, he will command:

1. *First battalion.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Left* DRESS.

208. At the fourth command this battalion will align itself on the two markers.

209. The right guides of the following battalions will each conform himself to the direction of the right guide of the battalion preceding his own in the column, so as to enter on the new direction parallelly to that battalion and at the distance of eight paces from its rear rank.

210. Each chief of battalion on arriving opposite the left marker will himself halt, see his battalion file past, then halt and align it by the same commands and means prescribed in No. 207.

211. The change of direction by the left flank will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means.

Being in column at half distance or closed in mass to take distances.

212. A column at half will take full distance by the head of column when it has to prolong itself on the line; if on the contrary, it has to form itself into line on the ground it occupies, it will take distances on the leading or on the rear subdivision, according as the one or the other may find itself on the ground where the right or left of the regiment is to rest when in line.

213. The column being by company (or battalion) at half distance and at a halt, should the colonel wish to cause it to take full distance by the head of column, he will command:

By the head of column take wheeling distances.

214. At this the chief of the leading company (or battalion) will command.

1. *First company (or first battalion) forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH, (*or double quick* MARCH.)

215. At the command *march*, the leading subdivision will move forward, and when the second company shall have nearly its wheeling distance, its chief will command:

1. *Second company or battalion forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH.

216. At the command *march*, which should be given at the instant this company has attained its wheeling

Digitized by Google

distance, it will step off smartly, taking the step from the leading company.

217. Each of the other companies will successively execute what has just been prescribed for the second.

218 In column by companies the majors will see that each company puts itself in march at the instant it has attained its full distance.

219. Should the column be in march, the colonel wishing to take distance by the head of column, will command:

1. *By the head of column, take wheeling distance.*
2. MARCH.

220. At this the chief of the leading company will command:

1. *First company double quick.* 2. MARCH.

221. At the second command the leading company will move off in double quick time, the chiefs of the other companies will in succession, as they attain their distances, cause their companies to move in double quick time, as soon as the rear company has its distance, the colonel will add:

3. *Column, quick time.* 4. MARCH.

222. If a column at half distance be marching in *double quick time*, the colonel will give the same commands as in No. 219, the leading company will continue the same gait, the chiefs of the other companies will briskly command, *quick time* MARCH, and as each successively gains its distance he will add, *double quick* MARCH, and move forward in the trace of the preceding company.

To take distance on rear company.

223. Should the colonel wish to take distances on the rear company, he will signify his intention to the lieutenant-colonel and aide-de-camp, these officers will briskly post three markers on the direction to be given the line; the aide-de-camp will post the first abreast with the left guide of the rear company, the second towards the head of the column at company distance from the first, the lieutenant-colonel will post the third, the adjutant of the leading battalion, correctly on the prolongation of the other two and a little beyond the point to which the head of the column will extend, the three facing to the rear; these dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *On rear company, take wheeling distance.* 2. *Column forward.* 3. *Guide left.* 4. MARCH, (*or double quick* MARCH.)

224. At the third command the captains will all place themselves two paces outside of the directing flank; the chief of the rear company will caution it to stand fast.

225. At the fourth command, the rear company will stand fast; its chief will align it by the left on the first marker, then command FRONT, at this the marker will retire and the left guide of this company will take his place.

226 At the same command all the other companies will step off briskly, the leading guide directing himself a little within the third marker; when the ninth or company next the rear has arrived opposite the second marker, its chief will halt and align it on this marker in the same manner prescribed for the tenth or rear company.

227. When the chief of the eighth company sees that there is sufficient space between his own and the ninth company for it to wheel into line, he will command, HALT; the left guide will instantly face about and promptly place himself on the direction, and the moment he shall be assured in his position by the aide-de-camp, he will face about, and the captain will align his company to the left, then add, FRONT.

228. The chiefs of the other companies will each conform to what has just been prescribed for the eighth, or third company from the rear,

229. The majors of each battalion will briskly follow up the movement and see that each company halts at the prescribed distance, the aide-de camp will assure the guides of the left wing, and the lieutenant-colonel those of the right wing on the direction, the colonel giving a general superintendance to the whole movement.

To take distances on the head of the column.

230. To take distances on the leading company the colonel will cause three markers to be established on the line, in the manner just prescribed, except that the first will be abreast with the left guide of the leading company, the second at company distance in rear of the first, and the third without the point where the rear of the column will extend, the three faced to the front, in this case the lieutenant-colonel will post the two first, and the aide-de-camp the third, the colonel will then command:

Digitized by Google

1. *On first company take wheeling distance.* 2. *Regiment about*—FACE. 3. *Column forward.* 4. *Guide right.* 5. MARCH.

231. At the second command all the companies, except the first, will face about, the guides will remain in the front rank, now become the rear.

232. At the fourth the captains will place themselves two paces outside their guides.

233. At the fifth the captain of the first company will align it as prescribed in No. 225, on the first marker.

234. At the same time all the remaining companies will put themselves in march, the guide of the rear one will direct himself a little within the third marker, when the second company shall have arrived opposite the second marker its captain will halt it, cause it to face about, and then align it on this marker on the principles prescribed in No. 225.

235. At the instant the third company shall have its wheeling distance its chief will halt it, and face it about, as soon as this company has faced about the left guide will briskly place himself on the direction of the preceding guides and at precisely company distance, when the captain will align his company by the left on this guide.

236. The chiefs of the remaining companies will successively conform to what has just been prescribed for the chief of the third company.

237. The various movements will be executed according to the same principles in a column left in front.

238. They will also be executed in like manner in a column closed in mass; but should the colonel wish to only open the column to half instead of wheeling distance, he will substitute in the commands the indication *half* for that of *wheeling* distance.

239. In column by battalion, distance will be taken according to the same principles.

Being in column by company closed in mass to form battalions.

240. The column by company being closed in mass right in front and at a halt, to cause it to form battalions, the colonel will command:

(Fig. 26.) 1. *Form battalions.* 2. MARCH.

241. At the first command the captains of the left companies, in each battalion, will command, *such company left face*, and place themselves by the left guide, the chiefs of all the right companies will caution them to stand fast; the adjutants will move rapidly, with-

Digitized by Google

out the point, and on the prolongation of the line where the left of their respective battalions will rest when formed and facing to the right will mark the alignment.

242. At the second command all the left companies will step off at once (the right companies standing fast) their captains standing fast will see their companies file past, and as soon as the right guide of their company is nearly abreast with them, they will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

243. The second command will be given at the instant the right guide has cleared the left of the right company, the third immediately after the second.

244. The company having faced to the front, the files, if there should be intervals between them, will incline to the right, the left guide will place himself on the alignment faced to the front and be corrected in his position by the adjutant who will retire as soon as this guide is posted, the captain placing himself outside the guide, will then align his company between this guide and the right company by the command:

Right—DRESS.

245. At this the left company will dress forward on the alignment of the right company, and when executed he will add: FRONT.

246. The majors will superintend the general execution of the formation of their respective battalions and, when completed, place themselves before its centre.

247. If the column by company be in march instead of at a halt, should the colonel wish to form battalions, he will command:

1. *Form battalions.* 2. MARCH.

248. At this the chiefs of the right companies will briskly command such company, *mark time;* the chiefs of the left companies will at the same time command: *such company by the left flank*—MARCH, and placing himself abreast with the left guide of the right company will see his company file past him, and when it has cleared the column he will add:

By the right flank—MARCH.

249. Each of the left companies after facing by the right flank will move on the alignment of the right companies, and as soon as the battalions are formed the colonel will command:

Digitized by Google

3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide left.* 5. MARCH.

250. At the fifth command, the column will resume the gait at which it was marching previous to the commencement of the movement.

Being in column at half or full distance to form battalions.

251. If the the column be at a halt, and at half or full distance, battalions will be formed by the same commands, and by the same principles prescribed in No. 240, and following, except that after the command *front*, the captains will add, *forward*, MARCH, and upon arriving near the rear rank of the right company, he will command: HALT, *Right*—DRESS, FRONT, which will be executed as indicated in No. 245.

252. If the left be in front the movement will be executed by inverse means; the right companies conforming to what is prescribed for the left companies when the right is in front.

253. If the column be marching at full distance right in front, should the colonel wish to form batlalions, he will command:

1. *Form battalions.* 2. MARCH.

254. At the first command the chiefs of all the right companies will caution them to continue to march straight forward, adding, *guide right*, the chiefs of all the left companies will briskly command:

Such company left oblique, double quick.

255. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of the left companies, the right companies will continue to march straight forward, the left companies will oblique to the left in double quick time, and at the instant the right guide has cleared the column, the chiefs of left companies will command, *forward*, and on approaching the rear rank of the right company add, *quick time*, MARCH, when they will retake the step in quick time and move upon the alignment of the right companies; this being executed the colonel will add, *guide left.*

256. In marching in column at half distance, battalions will be formed by the same commands and principles indicated in Nos. 247 and 248.

257. The last movement being considered as the element of deployments much attention will be given to its correct execution, that the files when marching by a flank preserve accurately their distances, and that the captains observe to halt their companies at the instant his right guide has cleared the column.

Digitized by Google

Manner of passing from column into line at full distance.

258. The column being at a halt right in front, to form it on left into line after rectifying the positions of the left guides, the colonel will command:

1. *On left into line, wheel.* 2. MARCH.

259. At the first command the 1st lieutenants will briskly place themselves on the direction of their left guides at a point about where the right of their companies will rest when in line, and facing to this guide will be assured on their direction by the lieutenant-colonel.

260. At the command *march* each company will wheel to the left, on the principles prescribed for the wheel from a halt, and as the right guides arrive within three paces of the new line, each captain will command, *such company* HALT, *right* DRESS, which will be executed as heretofore explained.

261. The lieutenant-colonel placed on the extreme right will observe that each company is accurately aligned by its chief, and in cases of error may order such company forward or back as the case may be, then command, FRONT and resume his place in line.

262. A column left in front will form on *right into line* according to the same principles, the 1st lieutenant moving on the line at a point where the left of their companies will rest when in line, and facing to their right guides

263. A column by battalion will form itself into line, either with the right or left in front, by the same commands and principles, in this case the majors will command and cause to be executed what has been prescribed for the captains, and the adjutants what has been indicated for 1st lieutenants.

264. If the column be in march and the colonel should wish to form line and continue to move forward, without halting, he will command:

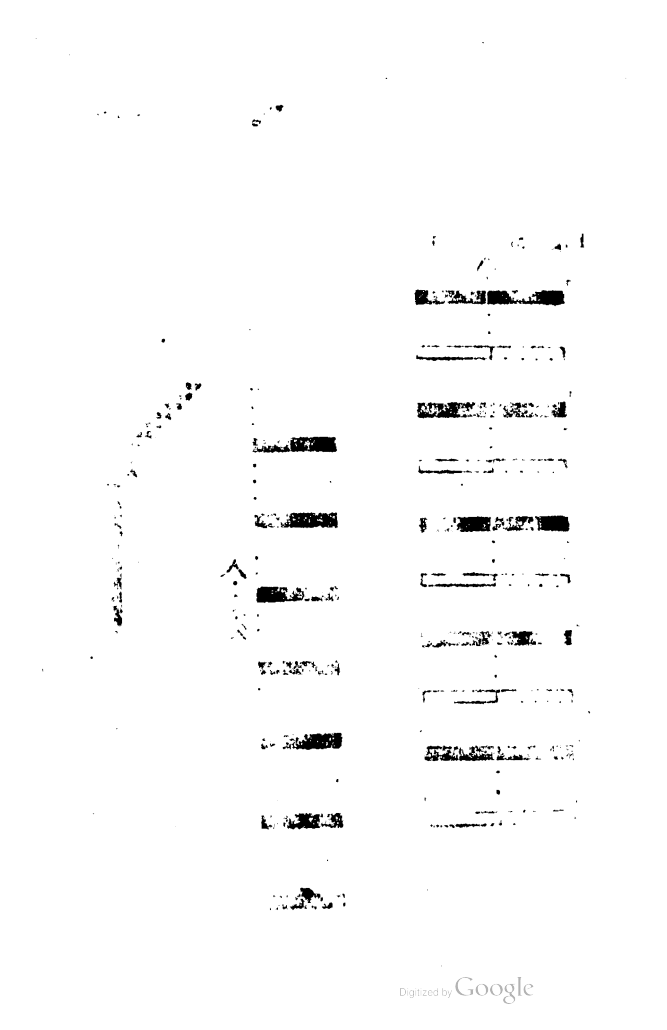
1. *By companies, left wheel.* 2. MARCH.

265. At the command *march*, each company will wheel left on a fixed pivot, and as the right of each company arrives near the line the colonel will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide centre.* 5. MARCH.

266. At the fourth command the color bearer will take points of direction as heretofore explained; at the fifth given at the instant the wheel is completed the companies will march directly to the front, touching lightly towards the centre.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Fig. 26. P 125

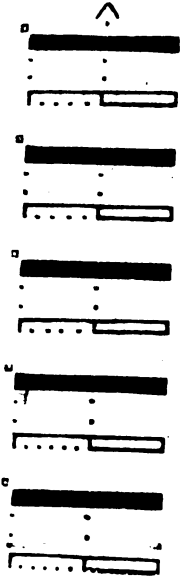
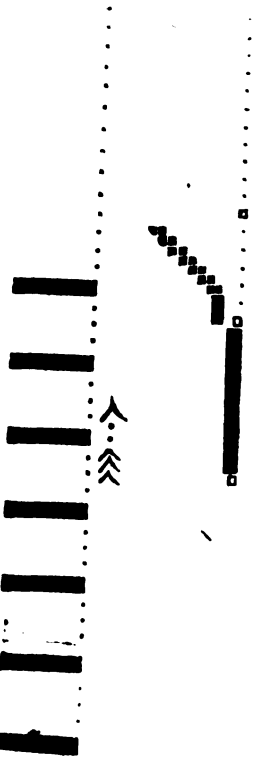


Fig. 27. P 129



Digitized by Google

To form by inversion right (or left) into line.

267. Should a column right in front be under the necessity of instantly forming a line faced to the reverse flank, the colonel will command:

1. *By inversion, right into line, wheel.* 2. MARCH.

268. At the second command, each company will wheel to the right as prescribed for a wheel from a halt, and be halted and aligned to the left by its chief on the same principles indicated in No. 260 and following.

269. A column left in front will form by inversion left into line, according to the same principles.

270. If the regiment is to move forward after wheeling by inversion into line, the colonel will add the commands prescribed in No. 265.

A column at full distance on right into line.

271. A column by company right in front at full distance having to form itself on right into line, the colonel will indicate to the lieutenant-colonel a little in advance of the point where the right of the line is to rest when formed, who will briskly move to that point, and post a marker, (the adjutant of leading battalion) facing the direction the column is marching, he will then place a second marker (a 1st lieutenant) on the direction and at about battalion distance from and facing to the first marker; the colonel will then command:

(Fig. 27.) 1. *On right into line.* 2. *Guide right.*

272. At the second command the right will become the directing flank, the right guide of the leading company will march straight forward up to the turning point, the following guides marching in his trace.

273. The leading company on arriving near the first marker, its chief will command:

1. *First company.* 2. *Right turn.* 3. MARCH.

274. At the command *march*, this company will turn to the right, its right guide will direct his march on the first marker, so that when in line his breast will rest lightly against the left elbow of this marker, when at three paces from the line, the captain will command:

1. *First company.* 2. HALT. 3. *Right*—DRESS. 4. FRONT.

275. At the second command the company will halt, the files not yet in line will come up briskly, the right guide will place himself on the line touching the left elbow of the marker; at the third the com-

Digitized by Google

pany will align themselves on this guide, and at the fourth the captain will resume his place.

276. The second company will continue to march straight forward, passing in rear of the first, and as it approaches opposite the left flank of the first company, its chief will command, and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for the first.

277. At the instant this company is formed the adjutant and the left company 1st lieutenant of the next (second) battalion will move briskly on the line, the first will place himself four paces to the left of the last file of the second company and facing to the right will cover accurately the two markers already established; the 1st lieutenant near the point where the left of the second battalion will rest, facing to the right and covering the adjutant; the remaining battalions will in like manner successively execute what has just been prescribed for the second.

278. The third company will continue straight forward, until opposite the adjutant, when it will turn to the right as has been explained, and thus from right to left, the odd numbered companies forming on their adjutant, and the even numbers on the last file of the odd numbers.

279. The lieutenant-colonel moving briskly along the line will observe that the adjutants cover accurately, and when the line is formed will correct any errors that may occur, then command FRONT, when the markers will resume their places in line.

280. The colonel will give a general superintendance to the movement, passing along the front, will be always opposite the company about to turn, that he may better judge of the correctness of their movements.

281. A column left in front will be formed on left into line according to the same principles.

282. In order that the foregoing movements, (right or left into line) may be executed with regularity, the first marker should be posted, so that the guide of each company after turning may have at least ten paces to march before arriving upon the line.

283. In the first exercises this line will be established on a line parallel to that of the column; but after the officers become familiar with the movements the colonel may chose oblique directions in order to habituate the regiment to form line in any direction; in this case, where the line forms a sensible angle with the direction of the column, the colonel, before beginning the movement, will cause the head of the column to change direction parallel with this line; all the other subdivisions will come up succes-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

sively and change direction at the same point, by this means all the guides of the column after turning will have about the same number of steps to take, in order to come up on the line.

284. In executing this movement, should the column wish to commence firing, he will instruct the captain of the leading company to this effect; this captain, after forming on the line will place himself behind the centre of his company, and as soon as the next captain shall have commanded *front*, he will commence the fire by file, by the commands prescribed in school of the company, at the command *fire by file*, the first marker will retire; the captain of the second company will commence firing as soon as the captain of the third has commanded *front*, and thus in continuation from right to left; the guides or markers, who may be in front of companies, will retire at the caution from the captains of *fire by file*,

285. In all successive formations when firing is to be executed by file, the same principles will be observed; this fire will always be executed by the command of each captain.

Movement from column at full distance, forward into line.

286. The column being by company, at full distance right in front, and at a halt, to form it forward into line, the colonel will first conform to what is prescribed in No. 271, and then command:

(Fig. 28.) 1. *Front into line.* 2. MARCH.

287. At the first command the chief of the leading company will briskly give the caution, *first company forward, guide right*, the chiefs of all the remaining companies will rapidly command:

1. *Such company.* 2. *Left half wheel.*

288. At the command *march*, briskly repeated, the first company will move forward, halt at three paces from the line, and be aligned upon the markers by its chief; all the remaining companies at the word *march*, will make a half wheel to the left on fixed pivots, and when the wheel is nearly completed, the captains will add:

3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide right.* 5. MARCH.

289. At the fourth command the men will touch to the right; at the fifth, given at the instant the wheel is completed, the company will cease to wheel, and march straight forward, the right guides of each company will follow the file immediately before him.

290. When the second company shall arrive opposite

Digitized by Google

the left file of the first, its chief will cause it to turn to the right, by the command:

1. *Second company.* 2. *Right turn*, (and when its right guide shall be within three paces from the line he will add): 3. HALT. 4. *Right*—DRESS.

291. At the third command the company will halt; the files not yet in line will come up promptly, the left guide will place himself promptly on the line, and be assured in his position by the lieutenant-colonel; at the fourth the company will align itself between this guide and the left file of the first company.

292. At the instant the guide of the second company turns to the right, the guide of the third ceases to follow the file immediately before him, but will march straight forward; and when he shall arrive opposite the left file of the second company, his captain will cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for the second, each following company will execute what has just been prescribed for the third.

293. The formation ended, the lieutenant-colonel will conform to what is indicated in No. 279.

294. A column left in front will form front into line according to the same principles and by inverse means.

295. When the column by company, right in front, at full distance is in march and shall arrive behind the right of the line, the colonel will indicate to the lieutenant-colonel in advance the point where the right of the line will rest, when this officer will proceed briskly to post markers on this line as heretofore explained.

296. The head of the column arriving within company distance of the line of markers, the colonel will command:

1. *Front into line.* 2. MARCH.

297. At the first command the captains will all conform to what is prescribed in No. 287.

298. At the command *march*, the principles and commands prescribed in No. 288 and following will be observed.

299. If the colonel should wish to form the column forward into line without halting, he will not cause markers to be posted, the movement will be executed by the same commands and according to the same principles, except that he will precede the command *march* with that of *double quick*.

300. At the word march, the first company will con-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

tinue to march in *quick time*, the lieutenant-colonel will assure the right guide of this company on the direction, the second company will resume the same gait as soon as it shall arrive on the line with the first, the remaining companies moving in double quick time, will on arriving on a line with those already formed, conform to what has just been prescribed for the second, each company will preserve the touch of elbows to the right, until the colonel commands *guide centre*, which will be given when the color company shall arrive on the line.

301. If the command *halt* should be given before this movement is completed, the companies not yet in line will move up promptly and complete the movement.

302. Should the column by company, be at a halt, right in front, and the colonel wishing to form forward into line on fifth company will indicate his intention to the lieutenant-colonel, who will briskly move to the right of this company and post two markers, the first (the adjutant of the third battalion) in advance of, and grazing the breast of the right guide of this company, facing to the right; the second (1st lieutenant of the sixth company) on the line at battalion distance from the first facing to the right and at a point where the left of the third battalion will rest when formed, these dispositions being made, he will command:

(Fig. 29.) 1. *On fifth company.* 2. *Front into line.* 3. MARCH.

303. At the second command the chief of the fifth company will command, *fifth company right*—DRESS, the chief of all the companies in rear of this (fifth) will briskly command, *such company left half wheel*, at the same instant the chiefs of all the companies in advance of the fifth, or base company will briskly command, such companies *about*—FACE, which will be executed promptly and then add: *left half wheel.*

304. At the command *march*, the base company will be aligned on the first marker as heretofore explained; the remaining companies will execute a half wheel to the left, then receive from their chiefs the command *forward, guide right.*

305. At the instant the movement commences, the adjutant of the second battalion and the 1st lieutenant of the right company in this battalion will move rapidly on the prolongation of the line; the first will take post, facing to, and four paces from the first marker, whom he will cover accurately, the 1st lieutenant will place himself a little without the point where the right of his battalion will rest when form-

Digitized by Google

ed, face toward the first marker and both be assured in their positions by the lieutenant-colonel.

306. As the right guide of the fourth company arrives opposite the adjutant, its chief will command: 1. *Fourth company.* 2. *Right turn*, when this company will turn to the right around this adjutant, pass the line of markers about four paces, when he will add: 3. *Company*—HALT. 4. *About*—FACE, then placing himself on the line of markers, and opposite the right of his company, will align the same to the left, on the adjutant, by the command:

5. *Left*—DRESS. 6. FRONT.

307. The chief of the third company at the instant his right guide arrives opposite to the right of the fourth company, will cause it to turn to the right, pass the line, then execute what is prescribed from that position in No. 306.

308. At the moment this (the third) company halts and faces about, the adjutant of the first battalion will place himself on the prolongation of the line of markers, and four paces without the point where the right of this company is to rest, facing to the first marker; the 1st lieutenant of the first company will place himself as indicated for 1st lieutenant in No. 308; the second and third companies will then place themselves on the line by conforming to what has been prescribed for the fourth and third.

309. All the companies in rear of the fifth, or base company, will conform to what is prescribed in No. 289 and following.

310. The aide-de-camp will assure the markers of the left wing in their positions, and when the movement is completed the lieutenant-colonel will execute what is prescribed in No. 279.

311. A column may be formed forward into line on any designated company, according to the same principles.

312. The precision of the foregoing movements depend materially on the markers, in placing themselves promptly on the line, and at their proper distances, as herein prescribed; and in the captains giving the command *forward* at the instant their companies have made the eighth part of a circle in wheeling.

313. Should a company encounter an obstacle in moving forward to place itself on the line, its chief will cause it to face by the right flank and file left, by the commands indicated in school of the company, the right guide will continue to follow the file behind which he was marching, and preserve exactly the

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

same distance from this file, the obstacle being passed the company will again be formed into line by command of its chief.

To form line faced to the rear,

314. The column being by company at full distance, right in front and at a halt, to cause it to form line, faced to the rear, the colonel will signify his intention to the lieutenant-colonel, who will briskly move forward and post two markers; the first (the leading adjutant) at company distance in advance of the leading company, and on the prolongation of the line of left guides in the column, facing the direction to be given to the line; the second (the lieutenant of first company) at company distance in advance, and on a line with the right guides of the column, facing to the first marker, the colonel will then command:

(Fig. 80.) 1. *Into line, face to the rear.* 2. MARCH.

315. At the first command each captain will briskly command, *such company right face.*

316. At the command *march*, the leading company will wheel by file to the left, and direct its march towards the line, passing in rear of the 1st lieutenant, and after crossing the line about three paces will wheel by file to the left, by command of its chief, and march parallel with the line, at the instant its right guide arrives opposite the adjutant, he will add: HALT. FRONT. *Right*—DRESS, when he will align his company on these two markers.

317. All remaining companies will put themselves in march by the right flank, at the same time each directing itself on the point where its left will rest when in line.

318. At the instant the companies are put in march the 1st lieutenant of the second company will move rapidly on the line and place himself facing to and covering the two markers, and at company distance from the second, thus marking the point where the left of his company will rest when formed; the adjutant of the second battalion will next place himself on the line four paces in rear of this lieutenant, at the point where the right of his battalion will rest, and the 1st lieutenants of this battalion will briskly place themselves on the line where the left of their companies will rest, and thus in succession from right to left.

319. The chief of the second company marching abreast with his right guide will direct himself on his 1st lieutenant, passing around his rear; and after crossing the line about three paces will cause it to

Digitized by Google

wheel by files to the left, then halting it when his right guide is opposite to the left file of the first company will place himself near his lieutenant and align his company by the right on the left file of second company.

320. The chiefs of the remaining companies will conform to what has just been prescribed for the first and second companies.

321. A column left in front will form line faced to the rear according to the same principles and by inverse means; in this case the adjutants will mark the point where the left of their battalions will rest, and the 1st lieutenant where the right of their company will rest when formed; the companies will all face to the left, and the captains will place themselves abreast with their left guides.

322. If the column be in march, and should arrive in front of the right of the line on which it is to form, the lieutenant-colonel will conform to what is prescribed in No. 314, by posting the markers on this line, when the head of this column shall arrive at company distance from these markers, the colonel will command:

1. *Into line faced to the rear.* 2. *Column by the right flank.* 3. MARCH.

323. At the command *march*, all the companies will conform to what is prescribed in No. 316 and following, and place themselves on the alignment.

Formation in line by two movements.

324. Should a column by company right in front, and at a halt, find itself in part on the line; that is, supposing that the head of column has changed direction to the right, and the command *halt* given at the instant that the fifth company has completed the wheel it would throw the first five companies on the line, and the remaining five companies in rear of the centre of said line, from this position the line will be formed by two movements combined, the colonel commanding:

(Fig. 31.) 1. *To the left and front into line.* 2. MARCH.

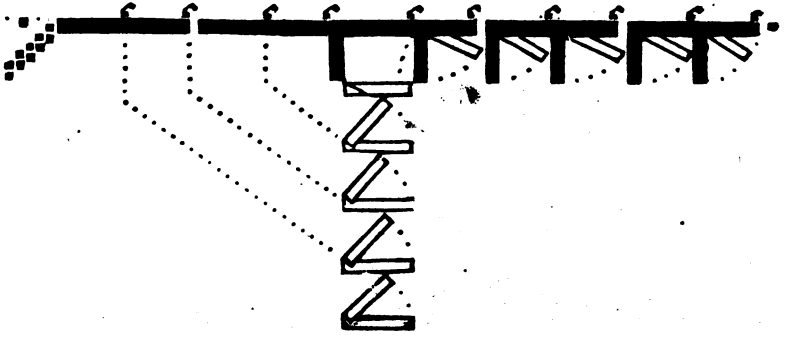
325. At the second command, chiefs of the rear companies will briskly command: *by company left half wheel.*

326. At the command *march*, the first five companies will wheel left into line as prescribed in No. 260, the five rear companies will form forward into line, by the principles and commands indicated in No. 288 and following.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Fig. 31.



Digitized by Google

327. If the column be in march the colonel will give the same commands, the chiefs of those companies that have entered the new direction will command: *such companies left wheel*, those that have not entered upon the new direction will form forward into line.

328. Should the colonel wish, from this position to form line without halting, he will command:

1. *By companies to the left and front into line.* 2. MARCH.

329. At the first command chiefs of companies that have entered upon the new direction will briskly command: *such company left wheel*, chiefs of rear companies will command: *such company left half wheel double quick.*

330. At the word *march*, the rear companies will execute forward into line in double quick time, each of the other companies will wheel left into line, and as their right guides approach the line the colonel will add:

3. *Forward.* 4. *Guide centre.* 5. MARCH.

331. If the regiment should arrive in front of the centre of a line the colonel may cause the head of column to change direction to the left, and as the fifth (or any) company is making the wheel to enter the new direction the colonel will command:

1. *On left, and into line faced to the rear.* 2. MARCH.

332. At the first command, chiefs of rear companies will briskly command: *such companies by the right flank.*

333. At the command *march*, the first companies will form *left into line*, the rear companies *into line faced to the rear*, see No. 316 and following.

Manner of passing from column at half distance into line.

334. A column at half distance right in front having to form on left into line will take distance by one of the principles prescribed in No. 212, and then form line according to the principles indicated in No. 258 and following.

335. The column by company at half distance being in march, should it be necessary to form rapidly into line the colonel will command:

1. *On rear company left into line, wheel.* 2. MARCH.

336. At the first command the adjutant of the leading battalion will move rapidly to the front, and place himself on the line a little beyond where the right will rest when formed, and on the prolongation of the left guides of the column, the captain of the rear com-

Digitized by Google

pany will command: *left wheel*, the other captains will caution their companies to march straight forward, and place themselves two paces outside the left guide of their companies.

337. At the command *march*, repeated by the captain of the rear company the guide will halt, and this company will wheel left on a fixed pivot; on arriving near the line its captain will halt it and align it by the left.

338. When the captain of the ninth (or company next the rear) has gained ground sufficient to the front to allow the rear company to form into line, he will command: 1. *Ninth company.* 2. *Left wheel.* 3. MARCH. the left guide will halt, face to the rear, and place himself on on the alignment of the rear company, then face to the front, this company will wheel left, and be aligned as prescribed for the rear company.

339. The other companies will successively conform to what has been prescribed for the ninth.

340. Adjutants will successively mark the points where the left of their battalions will rest, in order to preserve the four paces interval between each battalion.

341. A column at half distance right in front will form right into line by the same commands and means indicated in No. 273 and following.

342. A column at half distance will be formed into line faced to the rear, on the principles prescribed for a column at full distance.

343. Should the colonel wish to form a column at half distance forward into line, he will cause it to close in mass and deploy it on one of the companies.

Deployment of column closed in mass.

344. When a column by battalion closed in mass arrives behind the right of the ground it is to occupy in line, the colonel will indicate to the lieutenant-colonel a little in advance the direction of the line, and the point where the right is to rest; the lieutenant-colonel will briskly move to that point, and post two markers, the first at the point indicated, and the second a little less than the front of a battalion from the first.

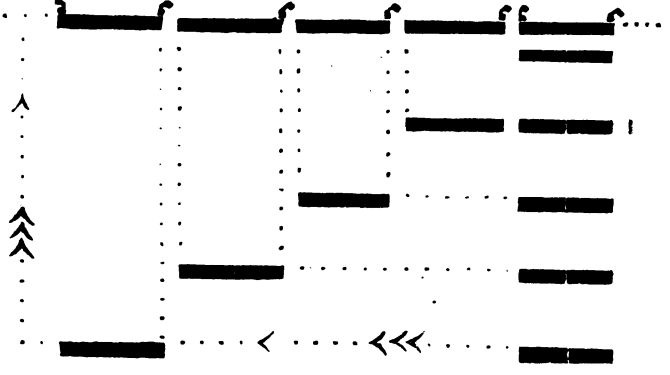
345. As the column approaches to within about four paces of the markers, the colonel will command:

(Fig. 32.) 1. *Regiment*—HALT. 2. *On first battalion deploy column.*

346. At the first command the adjutant of the rear battalion will move rapidly on the prolongation of the line of markers to a point a little beyond where

Digitized by Google

Fig. 32.



P 138

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

the left of the regiment will rest when deployed, then facing the markers will cover them accurately.

347. At the second command the chief of the first will caution his battalion to stand fast, the chiefs of the remaining battalions will each command: *such battalion left*—FACE, and place themselves abreast with the left guides of their battalion faced to the left.

348. The adjutant of the second battalion will promptly place himself on the line of markers where the right of his battalion will rest when deployed; the colonel will then add:

3. MARCH. (*or double quick march.*)

349. At this command the chief of the first battalion will go to its right and align his battalion on the first two markers, by the command: 1. *Right*—DRESS. 2. FRONT, and place himself before its centre.

350. The four battalions that have faced to the left will put themselves in march straight forward; the left guide of the second will direct himself parrallelly to the line of markers: the left guides of the the third, fourth and fifth, marching abreast with the left guide of the second, each preserving their prescribed distance from the other, the chief of the second battalion will stand fast, see his battalion file past him, and at the instant his right guide is abreast with his adjutant, he will command:

1. *Second battalion.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

351. At the third command this battalion will face to the front, and should there be any openings between the files they will be promptly closed to the right, the left guides of both companies will step upon the line, face to the right and place themselves on the direction of the markers established before the first battalion, each guide opposite the left file of his company, the major will place himself on the line outside his adjutant, and as the left guides are assured on the direction he will add: 4. *Right dress*, and after completing the alignment, FRONT.

352. The third, fourth and fifth battalions will continue to march straight forward, at the command *halt*, given to the second battalion, the chief of the third will himself stop short, abreast with the left file of the second, and allow his battalion to file past him, at the same time his adjutant will move briskly on the line to where the right of his battalion is to rest, face to the right and cover accurately the markers already established.

353. As the right guide of the third battalion arrives opposite this adjutant, the major will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Third battalion.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

354. As soon as this battalion has faced to the right, its chief will place himself before its centre, and add:

4. *Forward, guide right.* 5. MARCH.

355. At the command *march*, the battalion will approach the lines; the right guide will direct himself on the adjutant so as to present his breast to his right arm, when the battalion arrives within three paces of the alignment its chief will halt it and align it by the right.

356. The chief of the fourth and fifth battalions (and their adjutant) will conform to what has just been prescribed for the third.

357. The deployment being completed the lieutenant-colonel will comply with what is indicated in No. 270.

358. Should the colonel wish to deploy the column without halting and continue the march when in line, markers will not be posted, the colonel will command:

1. *On first battalion.* 2. *Deploy column.* 3. MARCH.

359. At the second command the chief of the first battalion will command, *guide right*, the chiefs of the remaining battalions will each command: 1. *Such battalion.* 2. *By the left flank.* 3. *Double quick*, and place themselves in front of their left guides.

360. At the command *march*, the first battalion will move straight forward in *quick time;* the second, third, fourth and fifth battalions will face to the left in marching and move off in that direction in *double quick time.*

361. The chief of the second will stand fast, allow his battalion to file past him, and when his right guide arrives opposite him he will command:

1. *Second battalion.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide right.*

362. At the third command, the adjutant will move rapidly towards his place in line in front of the right guide, at the fourth the right guide will direct himself on the adjutant, when this battalion arrives on the line, its chief will command: *quick time*—MARCH, at this it will take the step from the first battalion and move square to the front.

363. The chiefs of the third, fourth and fifth battalions will each successively conform to what has been prescribed for the second,

Digitized by Google

364. The column by battalion being at a halt, to cause it to deploy on fifth or rear battalion; the colonel will cause three markers to be posted by the lieutenant-colonel, about ten paces in advance of the leading battalion, the first on the prolongation of the line of left guides and facing the direction to be given the line; the second at battalion distance from the first, the third without the point where the right of the line will rest, covering accurately and facing the first two.

365. These dispositions being made the colonel will command:

1. *On fifth (or rear) battalion deploy column.* 2. MARCH.

366. At the first command the chief of the fifth or rear battalion will caution it to stand fast, the chiefs of all the preceding battalions will command: *such battalion right*—FACE, and place themselves abreast with their right guides.

367. At the command *march*, all except the fifth (or rear) battalion will put themselves in march by the right flank, the guide of the first directing himself about four paces in rear of the line marked by the right guide, the chief of the fourth or battalion next the rear will stand fast, see his battalion file past and halt it when its left guide is abreast with him and cause it to face to the front; should their be openings between the files they will promptly close to the left.

368. The chief of the fifth, when he sees his battalion nearly unmasked by the four preceding, he will command:

1. *Fifth battalion forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH.

369. At the command *march*, given at the instant his front is unmasked this battalion will approach the line of markers, and when at four paces from that line, he will add:

4. HALT. 5. *Left*—DRESS. 6. FRONT.

370. At the fifth command the battalion will dress forward on the markers.

371. At the instant the *fourth* battalion is unmasked by the *third*, its chief will cause it to approach the line, halt and align it in the manner just prescribed for the fifth.

372. The moment this battalion halts the adjutant and 1st lieutenant of the right company will place themselves on the line, faced to the left, covering accurately the markers in front of the fifth, the first at the point where the left of the battalion will rest, and

Digitized by Google

the other at a little less than the front of the battalion in his rear.

378. The third, second and first battalions will each successively conform to what has just been prescribed for the fourth.

374. The deployment being ended the lieutenant-colonel will correct the alignment if necessary, and command: FRONT, when the markers will resume their places in line.

375. Should the colonel wish to deploy on fifth battalion and continue to march forward, he will not cause markers to be posted, the movement will be executed by the same commands and upon the same principles, except that when the fifth battalion is unmasked, it will continue to march straight forward in quick time without being halted, taking the touch of elbows to the left; the fourth battalion on being unmasked will face by the left flank in marching and move to the front in double quick time; when it arrives on the alignment of the fifth it will retake the step in quick time by command of its chief, and dress to the left until the command, *guide centre* is given by the colonel.

376. The chiefs of the third, second and first battalions will conform to what has been prescribed for the fourth.

To advance in line.

377. The regiment being correctly aligned should the colonel wish to advance in line he will signify his intention to the lieutenant-colonel and place himself about thirty paces in rear of the color, faced to the front.

378. The lieutenant-colonel will place himself a like distance in advance of the color, faced to the colonel, who will establish him as correctly as possible by signal, on a line perpendicular to the front of the regiment; the colonel will next, above the heads of the lieutenant-colonel and color-bearer, take a point of direction in the field beyond, exactly in the prolongation of the first two points.

379. The color-bearer will be instructed to take, the moment the lieutenant-colonel shall be established on the perpendicular, two points on the ground in the straight line, which drawn from himself would pass between the heels of this officer; the first will be taken fifteen or twenty paces from the color-bearer, and the other beyond the lieutenant-colonel.

380. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

Digitized by Google

1. *Regiment forward.* 2. *Guide centre.*

381. At the second command the 2d lieutenant and color-bearers of the color platoon will advance with the color six paces to the front, the sergeant and two men of the rear rank of this platoon will place themselves in the front rank of the line, at the same time the 1st lieutenant of the right and left flank companies will each place themselves abreast with the color-bearers, the first six paces in advance of the right guide of the extreme right company, and the other a like distance in front of the left guide of the extreme left company.

382. The lieutenant-colonel having assured the color-bearer on the line between himself and the man of the color file now in the front rank will place himself promptly ten or twelve paces to the right of the major of the color battalion, and will maintain this major and those on his right, abreast with the color, and to this end he will caution them to lengthen or shorten the step as may be necessary; the aide-de-camp will in like manner and for a similar purpose, place himself six or eight paces to the left of the color rank.

383. These positions being taken the colonel will add: 3. MARCH.

384. At the word *march*, the regiment will step off with life, the color-bearer charged with the direction will scrupulously observe the length and cadence of the step, marching on the prolongation of the two points previously taken, and successively taking others in advance by the means heretofore explained, the 2d lieutenant on the right, and the man on the left of the color-bearers will march in the same step, keeping their shoulders square and in line.

385. The two 1st lieutenants will march in the same step with the color rank, each maintaining himself abreast with that rank without observing the movement of the other.

386. The captains will observe the march of their companies, directing the men to feel lightly the elbow towards the centre and resisting pressure coming from the flank.

To halt the regiment marching in line, and to align it.

387. The regiment marching in line when the colonel shall wish to halt and and align it, he will command:

1. *Regiment.* 2. HALT.

388. At the second command the regiment will halt, the color and guides will remain in front, the colonel will indicate to the lieutenant-colonel the direction

Digitized by Google

to be given the line, this lieutenant-colonel will move to the right and caution the right guide, and the color-bearer to face to him, and then by a signal of the sabre establish them on the direction, as soon as they shall be established, the left guide will place himself on their direction.

389. The color-bearer will carry the lance perpendicularly between his eyes on intimation from the adjutant to face to him, and at the same signal the lieutenant and the men of his rank will return to their places in line.

390. This disposition being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Guides*—ON THE LINE.

391. At this command the right guides of each company of the right wing and the left guides of each company of the left wing will place themselves on the direction facing to the color-bearer, each placing himself in rear of the guide of the company next towards the color, at a distance equal to the front of his company and align himself upon the color-bearer and the general guide beyond.

392. The lieutenant-colonel if necessary, will promptly rectify the positions of the guides of the right wing, and the aide-de-camp, those of the left wing, which being executed the colonel will add:

2. *On centre*—DRESS.

393. At this command the companies will move up in quick time and place themselves on the alignment as heretofore explained.

394. Should this line of guides be oblique to the former line the captains will take care to conform their companies to it in marching them towards the alignment.

395. The lieutenant-colonel will give a general superintendance to the alignment and, when complete, will command: FRONT, when the color and guides will promptly take their places in line.

To march in retreat in line.

396. The regiment being at a halt and in line to march in retreat, the colonel will command:

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Regiment About*—FACE.

397. At the second command the regiment will face to the rear, the color-bearers and 2d lieutenant will pass into the rear rank, now front, the sergeant and two men of their file will pass into the front rank, covering them, the colonel will place himself about

Digitized by Google

thirty paces in rear of the front rank, and the lieutenant-colonel a like distance in front of (the color in) the rear rank.

398. The colonel after assuring lieutenant-colonel on the perpendicular as indicated in No. 378, will command:

1. *Regiment forward.* 2. *Guide centre.*

399. At this command the color-bearers will advance six paces in front of the rear rank accompanied by the 2d lieutenant of the color platoon, the sergeant and two men of their file placing themselves in the rear rank and filling their places, the 1st lieutenant of the flank companies will place themselves abreast with the color rank on the principles prescribed in No. 381, the company guides having passed into the rear rank, now front.

400. The majors will move rapidly around either flank of their battalions, and place themselves before its centre, and on a line with the color rank, the captains and 1st lieutenants will march in the rear of the front rank, the lieutenant-colonel and aide-de-camp will place themselves on a line with the color rank, and maintain the majors on the line as indicated in No. 382, except that the first will be on the left of the major of the color battalion, and the other on the right of the major of the color file, these dispositions being promptly made, the colonel will add:

3. MARCH.

401. At the word *march* the regiment will move to the rear, upon the same principles as those prescribed for the march to the front.

To halt the regiment marching in retreat and face it to the front.

402. The colonel having halted the regiment by the commands indicated in No. 387, will cause it to face to the front by the command:

1. *Face by the front rank.* 2. *Regiment About*—FACE.

403. At the second command the color rank guides and majors will promptly take their places in line, the color-bearers and lieutenant passing into the front rank.

404. The alignment of the regiment after marching in retreat and then facing to the front, will be conducted in the same manner and according to the same principles prescribed in No. 388 and following, except that the color-bearer and guides will move to

Digitized by Google

the front on intimation from the lieutenant-colonel, and then place themselves on the direction.

Passage of obstacles.

405. The regiment advancing in line will be supposed to encounter an obstacle which covers the front of one battalion; in this case the colonel will cause it to ploy into column at full distance in rear of the battalion next towards the color; if the obstacle should present itself before the first battalion while advancing, the colonel will command:

First battalion—OBSTACLE.

406. At this command the major of this battalion will face to the line, and command:

1. *First battalion by the left flank to the rear into column.* 2. *Double quick.* 3. MARCH.

407. At the first command the adjutant will place himself on the left of the battalion, to conduct it passing in front.

408. At the word *march*, this battalion will face to the left in marching, the adjutant placing himself abreast with the left guide will conduct this battalion behind and parallel to the second; the major will himself halt when abreast with the right guide of the second battalion, and allow his battalion to file past him; when the last file shall be nearly abreast with him, he will add:

4. *By the right flank.* 5. *Guide right.* 6. MARCH.

409. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the right in marching and continue the same gait until it shall arrive at battalion distance from the second, when the major will again add: 7. *Quick time.* 8. MARCH, and place himself before its centre.

410. This battalion will then continue to follow in column behind the second; and at wheeling distance, its right guide following in the trace of the right guide of the second until the obstacle is passed, when the colonel will command:

1. *First battalion into line.*

411. At this command the major will face to his battalion, and command:

1. *First battalion right oblique.* 2. *Double quick.* 3. MARCH.

412. At the third command, the battalion will move in double quick time obliquely to the right, and as

Digitized by Google

soon as its left guide has cleared the right guide of the second battalion, the major will add: 4. *Forward.* 5. *Guide left*, and as it arrives on the line, 6. *Quick time*: 7. MARCH, all of which will be conducted upon the principles of forward into line without halting, as heretofore explained.

413. Should an obstacle occur before the front of any particular company it will ploy into column behind the remaining company of its battalion, its major commanding:

Such company, obstacle.

414. At this command the captain will command and cause to be executed what has just been prescribed for ploying a battalion, observing to ploy in rear of the remaining of his own battalion and at company distance.

415. The obstacle being passed the major will add: *such company into line*, which will be executed according to the same principles prescribed in No. 412.

To change front forward.

416. The regiment being in line should the colonel wish to change front forward on the right company of first battalon he will cause three markers to be posted, the first touching lightly the right elbow of the right guide of the regiment, faced to the front, the second a little less than company distance from the first, facing to him, and on a line perpendicular to the front of the regiment, the third without the point where the left of the line will rest when formed, facing to and covering accurately the first two, these dispositions being made the colonel will command:

1. *Change front forward on right company of first battalion*, 2. MARCH.

417. At the first command, the chief of the right company will give the caution, *first company right wheel*, chiefs of all the remaining companies will each promptly command.

Such company right half wheel.

418. At the word *march*, the first company will wheel right and be aligned on the markers; all the remaining companies will make a half wheel to the right, then receive from their chiefs the command, *forward, guide right*, and be conducted and formed upon line as prescribed in Nos. 289 and 290.

419. The front may be changed forward on any intermediate company, upon the same principles, the

Digitized by Google

colonel designating the company on which the line is to be formed in the commands; in this case the company forming the basis, will wheel right and be aligned on the markers; those in its rear will conform to what is prescribed in Nos. 417 and 418; those companies who are in front of the company designated will be faced about by command of their chiefs, then after executing a half wheel to the right, will move upon the line, be faced about and aligned by the left.

420. Changes of front perpendicularly to the rear, may be executed upon the same principles and by inverse means.

To ploy the regiment into close column doubled on the centre.

421. This movement consists in ploying the corresponding companies of the right and left wings into column at company distance, or closed in mass, in rear of the two centre companies, according to the principles prescribed in No. 74 and following.

422. The colonel wishing to form the double column at company distance, (the regiment being in line) will command;

(Fig. 33.) 1. *Double column at half distance.* 2. MARCH.

423. At the first command, the chief of the third, (or centre) battalion will caution his battalion to stand fast; the chiefs of those on its right will promptly command: *such battalion left face*, and the chiefs of all on its left will cause their battalions to promptly face to the right; the captains of the right wing will place themselves abreast with their left guides and break two files to the rear.

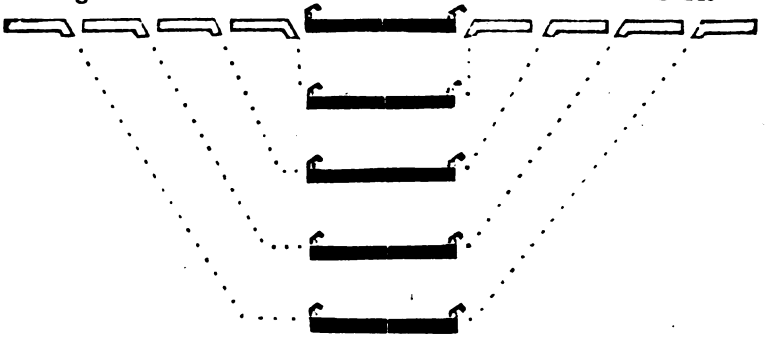
424. At the command *march*, the third battalion will stand fast; all the other companies, each conducted by their captains, will move off and place themselves in column at company distance, in rear of the third battalion, the left company of the second battalion uniting with the right company of the fourth, and the right of the second uniting with the left of the fourth, and thus alternately will each corresponding company of the two wings unite into battalions in arranging themselves into column; an instant before the union at the centre of the column, each captain will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

425. The majors and adjutants will follow the movement of their right companies, and at the instant the union is formed and the companies faced to the front, the majors will promptly align them by the right and

Digitized by Google

Fig. 33.



P 148

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

at company distance in rear of the preceding companies, then take positions as in column by battalion.

426. The battalions thus formed will be numbered from front to rear; first, second, third, &c.

427. The music when the movement commences, will move briskly to the rear of the column; the lieutenant-colonel will successively assure the right guides upon the direction.

428. The regiment in line being in march, should the colonel wish to form the double column at company distance, he will command;

1. *Double column at half distance.* 2. MARCH.

429. At the first command the chief of the third battalion will caution it to continue straight forward; all the other majors will caution their battalions to face to the right or left.

430. At the command *march*, the third battalion will continue straight forward, the major commanding, *guide right;* the color will retake its place in the front rank, and the men will take the touch of elbows to the right, the four right companies will face to the left in marching, and the four left companies to the right; each company conducted by its captain will place itself behind the company of the wing to which it belongs, gaining as much ground as possible towards the head of column.

431. The corresponding companies of each wing will unite into battalion on taking their positions in column, and each captain at the instant his company arrives at the centre of the column, will command:

Such company by the right (or left) flank—MARCH.

432. The majors conforming to what is prescribed in No. 423 will at the instant the companies face to the front, place himself before their centre, and command:

Guide right.

433. The double column closed in mass will be formed according to the same principles, and by the same commands, substituting *closed in mass* for that of *at half distance.*

Deployment of the double column faced to the front.

434. The double column being at a halt, should the colonel wish to deploy it, he will cause a marker to be posted before the right and left guides of the third (now first) battalion, and a third before the left guide of the right company of this battalion, this being done the adjutants of the first and fifth battalions

Digitized by Google

will move rapidly on the alignment of those markers and a little beyond where the right and left flanks ought to rest, he will then command:

1. *Deploy column.* 2. MARCH.

485. The column will deploy itself on the third battalion, upon the principles prescribed for the deployment of columns in mass, as heretofore explained.

486. The deployment being ended, the lieutenant-colonel will correct the alignment, and then command, FRONT, when the markers will resume their places in line.

To form from double column into line, faced to the right.

487. The double column being at a halt and at company distance, may be formed into line, faced to the right or left, should the colonel wish to reform on right into line, he will command:

1. *Right into line.* 2. *Guide right.* 3. MARCH.

488. At the first command, each captain will face to his company, and those of the right companies will briskly command: *such company right wheel*, those of the left companies, *such companies forward, guide right.*

489. At the command *march*, all the right companies will wheel to the right, halt, and be aligned by their chiefs; the left companies will conform to what is indicated in No. 276 and following, on forming on right into line.

440. To form from double column, left into line may be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, the colonel commanding:

1. *Left into line.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH.

441. At the command *march*, the left companies will wheel left into line, and the right companies will form on left into line, as indicated in No. 281.

Dispositions against cavalry.

442. The regiment being in column by company at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, should the colonel wish to form square, he will first cause battalions to be formed, and then command:

1. *Form square.* 2. *Close column at half distance.* 3. MARCH.

443. At the command *march*, the column will close to company distance, by the principles heretofore explained; the music will promptly place itself in the rear of the centre of the second, and the surgeon and

Digitized by Google

other staff officers in rear of the centre of the third battalion.

444. At the moment the movement commences the aide-de-camp will place himself on the right of the column, abreast with the leading battalion; these dispositions being made, the column may be put in march or caused to form square by the command:

(Fig. 34.) 1. *Form square.* 2. MARCH.

445. At the first command the lieutenant-colonel facing to the left guides, and the aide-de-camp facing the right, will each align these guides on the right and left guides of the fifth or rear battalion; the major of the first battalion will caution it to stand fast, that of the second, third and fourth will promptly command: *such battalion right and left* wheel; the chief of the fifth battalion will give the caution, *forward, guide left.*

446. At the command *march*, the first battalion will stand fast, its officers taking post as in line of battle, its right file facing to the right, and its left file facing to the left, the second, third and fourth battalions will wheel the right companies right into line, and the left companies left into line, the music, surgeon, &c. will advance a space equal to half the front of a company, and the fourth battalion will close up to form the square, be halted, faced about and aligned by the rear rank by its chief.

447. At the moment the alignment is completed, field and staff, battalion and company officers will enter the square.

448. The fronts of the squares will be designated as follows: the first battalion will always be the *first front*, the fifth or last battalion the *fourth front*, the right companies of the other battalions the *second front*, and the left companies of the same battalions the *third front*, the first and fourth fronts will be commanded by their respective chiefs; the second and third fronts by the senior majors, each taking post as in line of battle, the colonel attended by the lieutenant-colonel and aide-de-camp will take position in the centre.

449. The regiment being in line, should the colonel wish to form rapidly into a square, he will first form column doubled on the centre, according to the principles prescribed in No. 422 and following, preceding the command, *double column at half distance*, with that of *to form square*, he will then form square by the same commands and principles indicated in No. 444 and following; in this case the third battalion will form the first front, the two rear companies the

Digitized by Google

fourth, the companies of the right wing the second, and those of the left wing the third.

450. The regiment being formed into square should the colonel wish to advance a short distance without breaking into column, he will command:

1. *By first (or such) front, forward.* 2. MARCH.

451. At the first command the chief of the first front will give the caution, *such front forward, guide centre*, the chief of the second will command, *second front left* FACE, the chief of the third will command, *third front right*—FACE, and the fourth *about*—FACE, *forward guide centre.*

452. At the command *march*, the square will put itself in motion, the right guide of the left company of the first front will be charged with the direction, the companies marching by the flank will be prompt in preserving their distances, and the fourth front will keep constantly closed on the flanks of the second and third fronts.

453. To halt the square the colonel will command:

1. *Regiment.* 2. HALT.

454. At the second command the square will halt, the second and third fronts will be faced outwards, and the fourth about, by commands of their respective chiefs.

455. The square may be moved by either front, according to the same principles.

456. To reduce the square and break into column the colonel will command:

(Fig. 35.) 1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

457. At the first command the chief of the first front will caution it to move forward, the chief of the second will cause it to face to the left, and then command, *by company by file left*, the chief of the third front will cause it to face to the right, and then command, *by company by file right*, the chief of the fourth will caution it to stand fast.

458. At the word *march*, the first front will move forward, be halted and aligned by the left, when it has attained a distance equal to half its front, the corresponding companies of the second and third fronts, will wheel by file to the left and right, and march to meet each other behind the centre of the first battalion, and at the moment they unite, the captain of each, will halt his company and face it to the front, the battalion being re-formed, its chief will align it by the left.

Digitized by Google

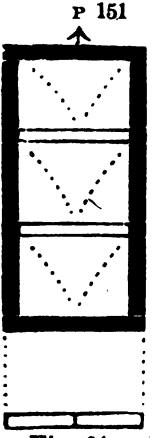


Fig. 34.

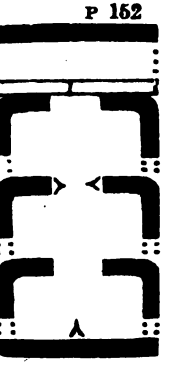


Fig. 35.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 34.

Digitized by Google

459. The chief of the fourth front will face it about and align it by the left, the music, sergeant, &c. will move out of the column to their places on the right flank.

460. The column thus formed may be put in march, formed in line or re-formed into square.

To form oblique squares.

461. The regiment being in line, should the colonel wish to form an oblique square, he will command:

1. *To form oblique square.* 2. *On first battalion, close column at half distance.* 3. MARCH.

462. At the second command the lieutenant-colonel will trace the alignment of the first battalion by placing himself in front of and near the right guide of this battalion, face to the left and march twelve paces along the front, face to the right and march twelve paces perpendicular to the front, halt and place a marker at this point, the adjutant of this battalion, will place himself, grazing the breast of the right guide and faced to this marker; these two markers being in position, the lieutenant-colonel will post a third at a point about where the left of this battalion will rest, and covering the first two accurately.

463. The chief of the first battalion will caution it to wheel right; chiefs of all the remaining will promptly command:

1. *Such battalion.* 2. *Right*—FACE.

464. At the command *march*, the first battalion will wheel right, halt, and be aligned on the markers; the chief of the second battalion will break files to the front, and placing himself abreast with his right guide will conduct it towards the left flank of the first battalion, and on arriving at company distance from the left marker, will himself halt, and cause his battalion to file right past him, and move parallel to the alignment of the first; as the last file of his battalion is abreast with him, he will add: HALT. FRONT. *Left* DRESS, when he will align his battalion at company distance, in rear, and parallel to the first; the other battalions will break files to the rear slightly, and enter the column in the manner prescribed for the second.

465. The column being formed the colonel will cause it to form square, by the commands and means indicated in No. 444 and following.

466. The formation of an oblique square to the left will be conducted according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

Digitized by Google

467. Should the regiment be already in column by battalion at half distance, to cause it to form an oblique square the colonel will first cause it to change direction by a flank, for this purpose he will command:

1. *To form oblique square.* 2. *Change direction by the right (or left) flank.* 3. MARCH.

468. At the second command the lieutenant-colonel will trace the direction in the following manner: he will place a marker before the right and left guides of the leading battalion, then placing himself against the marker on the side the change is to be made, and on the prolongation of this line will march twelve paces, face to the left (or right) and march twelve paces and establish a marker at this point, then a third at a point where the right (or left) of this battalion will rest; this being executed at the command *march*, the change of direction will be made by the same commands and means indicated in No. 205 and following.

The Rally.

469. The regiment being in line, the colonel may cause the disperse to be sounded; at this signal the line will break and disperse.

470. To cause the line to be re-formed the colonel will cause *to the color* to be sounded, and at the same time post two markers and the color-bearer in the direction he may wish to give the regiment.

471. At this signal each captain will rally his company about six paces in rear of the place it is to occupy in line, the colonel will then cause the color company to be promptly established against the markers, and each company by command of its chief will be promptly aligned on the color company.

472. To cause the regiment to rally in column, the colonel will cause the *assembly* to be sounded and place two markers before the position to be occupied by the first company; the chief of this company will rally and align it on these markers, and each of the other companies will be rallied at half distance behind the one which should precede it in the order in column.

REGULATIONS.

Precedence of Corps.

1. The precedence of corps is as follows, to wit:—1st. *Light Artillery.* 2nd. *Cavalry.* 3d. *Heavy Artillery.* 4th. *Infantry.* Platoons in companies; companies in

Digitized by Google

battalions; battalions regiments, and regiments in brigades or divisions.

Rank and Command.

2. The rank or grade of officers and non-commissioned officers is as follows:

1st. Lieutenant-General,	6th. Major,
2d. Major-General,	7th. Captain,
3d. Brigadier-General,	8th. First Lieutenant.
4th. Colonel,	9th. Second Lieutenant,
5th. Lieutenant-Colonel,	10th. Sergeant.

And in in each grade according to the corps named in their commission.

3. When of the same grade and corps according to date of commission, reference will be had to the rank of the platoon, company, battalion, regiment, brigade, division, department, or staff, in which such officers serve. staffs will take precedence according to the rank of their commanding officers, departments according to the rank of their respective chiefs,

4. Officers having bevets or commissions of a prior date to those of the regiment in which they serve, may take place in courts-martial, and on detachments, when composed of different corps, according to the rank given them in their brevets or dates of their former commisions; but in the regiment, battalion or company to which such officers belong, they shall do duty and take rank both in courts-martial and on detachments which shall be composed of their own corps, according to the commissions by which they are mustered in the said corps.

5. If, upon marches, guards, or in camp, different corps shall happen to join or do duty together, the officer highest in rank of the *line*, these on duty shall command the whole, and give orders for whatever is needful for the service, unless otherwise especially directed by the commanding general.

6. Brevet rank takes effect only in the following cases: 1st. By special assignment of the commanding general in commands composed of *different corps*. 2d. On *courts-martial* or *detachments* composed of *different corps*.

7. Troops are on *detachment* only when sent out *temporarily* to perform a *special* service.

Succession in command.

8. An officer who succeeds to any command or duty stands in regard to his duties in the same situation as his predecesssor. The officer relieved shall turn over to his successor all orders in force at the time, and all

Digitized by Google

the public property pertaining to his command on duty, and should receive therefor duplicate receipts, showing the condition of each article.

9. Any officer placed in temporary command will not, except in urgent cases, alter or annul the standing orders of the regular or permanent commanders.

Regulations of Officers.

10. No officer will be considered out of service on the tender of his resignation until it shall have been accepted by the proper authority.

11. Resignations of officers will be forwarded through their district commanders to the commanding general.

Regiments.

12. On the organization of a regiment, the battalions will receive from the colonel a permanent designation by numbers, of first, second, third, fourth and fifth, begining with the best disciplined; the companies will receive a like permanent designation by letter, beginning on the right of first battalion with A.

13. There will be to each regiment, one colonel, one lieutenant-colonel, one aide-de-camp, with the rank of major (who will also discharge the duties of regimental adjutant); one surgeon, one chief of music, one commissary of subsistence, with the rank of 2d. lieutenant, and two buglers.

14. To each battalion there will be one major, one adjutant (with the rank of captain) and one bugler.

15. To each company, one captain, one 1st lieutenant, five 2d lieutenants, five sergeants, one drummer and one fifer.

Hours of Service and Roll Calls.

16. The *reveille* will be sounded or beat at day-break, as a signal for the men to rise, and the sentenals to leave off challenging.

17. The *chaplain's call* will be sounded or beat at—— o'clock, morning and evening, as a signal for the companies to assemble within their respective tents, or quarters for prayers.

18. The *troop* will be sounded or beat at —— o'clock in the morning, for the purpose of assembling the men for duty and inspection at guard-mounting.

19. The *retreat* will be sounded or beat at sun-set, for the purpose of warning the officers and men for duty, and reading the orders of the day.

20. The *tattoo* will be sounded or beat at —— o'clock at night, after which no soldier is to be out of his tent or quarters, except he is on duty.

Digitized by Google

21. To *extinguish lights* will be sounded or beat, *thirty* minutes after tattoo, when lights will be extinguished and silenced observed throughout the camp or garrison.

22. The *sick call* will be sounded or beat at ——— o'clock, when the sick able to go out will be conducted to the surgeon's quarters by the 1st lieutenants, who will hand to the surgeon a report of all the sick in the company.

23. The *general* will be sounded only when the whole camp is to march, and is the signal to strike tents and prepare for the march.

24. The *assembly* is a signal to form by company.

25. *To the color* is a signal to form the regiment.

26. The *advance* is a signal for the whole to march.

27. In an encampment of several regiments the different daily beats will begin on the right, and be immediately followed by the whole army, to facilitate which, the *music call* will be sounded at head-quarters ten minutes before the time of beating, when the drummers or buglers will assemble before the colors of their respective regiments, and as soon as the beat begins on the right it will be taken up by the music of the whole army, each playing in front of their respective regiments.

28. Where the hour for the different signals are not given, the commanding officer will establish them according to season and circumstances.

Roll Calls.

29. There will be daily, at least two roll calls, viz:—at *reveille* and *retreat*, which will be made upon the company parades, by the 1st lieutenants—who will return the absentees with or without leave to the lieutenant-colonel, on the back of his morning report.

Morning Reports.

30. The morning reports of companies, signed by the captains, will be handed to the regimental adjutant before eight o'clock in the morning, and will be by him consolidated within the next hour, for the information of the colonel.

31. If this consolidation is to be sent to higher authority, it will be signed by the colonel.

Forms of Parade.

32. On all parades of ceremony, such as *reviews*, *dress parades*, or *guard mounting*, instead of the word "*rest*" the command will be "*parade rest*," at the last

Digitized by Google

part of the command the men will promptly take the position indicated in school of the platoon, No. 86.

Dress Parades.

33. There should be daily at least one dress parade, which may be at *troop* or *retreat*, as the commanding officer may direct, or at both should he think proper so to order. The parade at *troop* will be termed the *morning parade*, and that at *retreat* the *evening parade*. In either case it will be conducted as follows:

34. The *music* or *drummer's call*, will be sounded or beat, half an hour before *troop* or *retreat*, for the music to assemble on the regimental parade; this signal will be immediately followed by the *assembly* being sounded for the companies to turn out on their respective company parades for roll call and inspection.

35. Twenty minutes after the latter signal, *to the color* will be sounded, when the lieutenant-colonel and aide-de-camp will repair to the regimental parade, and place themselves on the line, the lieutenant-colonel ten paces to the left of the music, faced to the front; the aide-de-camp outside the point where the left of the line will rest when formed, and facing the lieutenant-colonel.

36. These positions being taken, the lieutenant-colonel will direct the music to play *quick* or *double quick time*, and the captains will march their companies to the regimental parades, where they will take their positions in line.

37. At the moment the first two companies unite, forming the first battalion, its major and adjutant will take their places as in line, and thus in succession from right to left.

38. When the line is formed, the lieutenant-colonel will move four paces to the front, face to the left and command:

1. *Attention regiment.* 2. *Order*—ARMS. 3. *Parade*—REST, then resuming his place on the right, will add: 4. *Music beat*—OFF.

39. At the fourth command the music will commence on the right, move ten paces forward, wheel to the left and beat in front from right to left in *common time*, then facing about will beat from left back to its place on the right in *quick time*.

40. When the music has ceased, the lieutenant-colonel will again move four paces to the front, face to the left and command:

1. *Attention regiment.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *To the rear open order.* 4. MARCH.

41. At the fourth command, the ranks will be open-

Digitized by Google

ed according to the principles prescibed in regimental evolutions.

42. The lieutenant-colonel on seeing the ranks aligned will march along the front to the centre, face to the right and pass the line of majors six paces, when he will *halt*, face about and command:

Present—ARMS.

43. When arms will be presented officers, saluting; on seeing this executed he will face about to the commanding officer (who has taken his post twenty-five paces in front of the centre) salute, and report "the parade is formed." He will then, on intimation to that effect take post three paces on the left of the commanding officer and one pace retired, passing around his rear, and the aide-de-camp will place himself at a like distance on the right of the commanding officer.

44. The colonel having acknowledged the salute of the line will, after the lieutenant-colonel and aide-de-camp have taken their post, draw his sabre and command: 1. *Regiment.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS, and add, such exercises as he may think proper, ending with *order*—ARMS, then returning his sabre will direct the aide-de-camp to receive the reports.

45. The aide-de-camp will then pass in front of the colonel, advance upon the line, halt at about twelve paces from him and command:

1. *1st Lieutenants to the centre.* 2. MARCH.

46. At the first command they will face to the centre, at the second they will march to the centre and halt; the aide-de-camp will then add:

3. FRONT. 4. *Report.*

47. At the last command, each in succession, beginning on the right will promptly salute with his sabre and report the result of the roll-call previously made upon the company parade; the aide-de-camp will then command:

1. *1st. Lieutenants, outward*—FACE. 2. *To your post.* 3. MARCH.

48. The 1st. lieutenants will then resume their places; the aide-de-camp will then face about to the colonel, salute, report absent officers, and give the result of the lieutenants' report.

49. The colonel will next direct the order to be read, when the aide-de-camp will face the line and announce:

Digitized by Google

Attention to orders.

50. He will then read the orders; after which he will face to the colonel, salute and report: *orders are read sir;* then on intimation from the colonel, he will again face the line and announce:

Parade is dismissed.

51. At this announcement the majors will return their sabres, face towards the centre and close on the aide-de-camp, who has placed himself on their line.

52. The aide-de-camp will then command: 1. FRONT. 2. *Forward*—MARCH; when they will move forward, dressing on the centre, music playing, and when they arrive within six paces of the colonel, he will add:

3. HALT.

53. The officers will then salute the colonel by raising the hand to the hat, and there remain until he has communicated to them such instruction as he may have to give, or announces that the ceremonies are finished, when they will disperse.

54. As the officers disperse the captains will close the ranks of their respective companies and march them back to their company parades, where they will be dismissed; the band continuing to play until all the companies have cleared the regimental parade.

55. All field, staff, battalion and company officers and men will be present at *dress parades*, unless especially excused, or on some duty incompatable with such attendance.

56. In case of the tempory absence of the colonel, or commanding officer, the officer next in rank present, will take command of the parade.

Guard-mounting.

57. Camp and garrison guards will be relieved every twenty-four hours. The guards at outposts will ordinarily be relieved at the same time, but this must depend upon their distance from camp, or such circumstances, as may sometimes make it necessary for them to continue on duty for several days in succession; in such cases they must be previously warned to provide themselves accordingly.

Manner of mounting guard.

58. Twenty minutes before guard-mounting, *troop* will be sounded as a signal for the duty-men to turn out on their company parades for inspection, and the aide-de-camp and music to repair to the regimental parade.

Digitized by Google

59. At this signal the 1st lieutenant will move to their respective company parades, and by the command, *turn out the guard*, will cause the duty-men to assemble, then forming them in two ranks, with the officer or sergeant on the right, will minutely inspect their arms, accoutrements and amunition, and see that everything is in complete order; to this end he will be held responsible that no soldier will pass inspection for duty at guard-mounting without the requisite amount of ammunition, and his arms in complete order.

60. Ten minutes after *troop* the aide-de-camp will direct the music to play, when the 1st lieutenants will cause their guards to face by the right flank, then placing themselves on the left, abreast with the leading file with sabre at a carry will conduct their guards to the regimental parade.

61. Each detachment as they successively arrive will be formed by their respective lieuntenants, the first on the left of the music, and four paces from it, the others on the left of the detachment that preceded it, the whole at open order, faced to the front, and at shoulder arms. The sergeants as they arrive will take post, the first on the right of the front, and the latter on the right of the rear rank.

62. The 1st lieutenants, after forming their detachments as above explained, will pass around the left flank and take post five paces in rear of the right file of their respective guards.

63. The aide-de-camp will have taken his post, ten or twenty paces in front of the centre, (varied according to the extent of the guard.

64. Should the aide-de-camp, in verifying the details find one or more men less than the specified number from any particular command or company, he will direct the officer so failing, to produce the remainder of his detail, before proceeding further.

65. During the formation of the detachments the officer of the guard will take post four paces in front of its centre, faced to the front, with sabre at a carry, the officers of the day will take post about ten paces in rear of the aide-de-camp, faced towards the guard; the old officer of the day two paces to the right of the new, and one pace retired.

66. The aide-de-camp, on ascertaining that the details are correct, will command: *Order*—ARMS, *Inspection*—ARMS, then proceed to minutely inspect the guard, beginning on the right of each rank, during the inspection the band will play.

67. The inspection being ended, he will return to his former position, and add:

Digitized by Google

1. *Parade—Rest.* 2. *Music—beat off.*

68. At the second command, the music will commence on the right, move six paces forward, wheel left and beat along the front from right to left, then from the left back to its place on the right, where it will cease to play.

69. The music having ceased, the aide-de-camp will command:

1. *Attention the guard.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *Close order.* 4. MARCH. This being executed he will add: 5. *Present*—ARMS.

70. He will then face about to the officer of the day and report, "*the guard is formed sir,*" and immediately take post on his right.

71. The new officer of the day after acknowledging the salute, will direct the officer of the guard to march them in review, or by a flank to their post.

72. If the officer of the day directs to pass in review, the officer of the guard will face about and command:

1. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 2. *By guards, right wheel.* 3. MARCH.

73. At the command *march*, the guard will wheel right by detachments, when the officer will add:

Pass in review, column forward, guide right—MARCH.

74. At the command *march*, the whole will move forward, the music playing, wheel left, and pass the officer of the day according to the order of review, conducted by the officer of the guard marching abreast with the leading sub-division.

75. When the music arrives abreast with the officer of the day it will wheel left out of the column and continue to play until the guard has passed, when it will cease and disperse.

76. When the column has passed the officer of the day, the officer of the guard will conduct it to *guard quarters*, the old officer of the day will then salute and give the old or standing orders to the new; the aide-de-camp and 1st lieutenants will at the same time, return their sabres and disperse.

77. Should the officer of the day direct the guard to be marched by a flank to its post, the officer of the guard will command:

Shoulder—ARMS, *Right*—FACE. *File left. To your post*—MARCH.

78. At the command *march*, the officer of the guard will conduct it by the shortest route to guard-quarters, the music playing until it has cleared the regi-

Digitized by Google

mental parade, when the officers and music will disperse.

79 In bad weather or while on fatiguing marches the ceremony of review may be dispensed with, but in no case will guards be mounted without inspection.

80. On the approach of the new guard, the old guard will be paraded, and arms presented as they march past.

81. The new guard will march past the old, in quick time at *shouldered arms*, officers saluting, and take post on their right, and be aligned on the same line, when its officer will command: *order*—ARMS, REST, the officer of the old guard will after the new guard has halted, command:

Shoulder—ARMS. *Order*—ARMS. REST.

82. The officer of the new guard will first, if the regiment is to march on that day, direct the details for the advanced guard, to be formed and marched to its post; if not, the list of the guard will be made and divided into three reliefs; the first relief will then be ordered two paces to the front, a sergeant of the new guard will take charge of it, and go to relieve the sentinels, accompanied by a sergeant of the old guard who will take charge of the old sentinels when the whole are relieved.

83. The relief, in two ranks, will march by a flank, conducted by the sergeant, on the side of the leading front rank man; the men of each relief will be numbered alternately in the front and rear rank, the man on the right of the front rank being No. 1.

84. The sentinel at the guard house or guard tent will be relieved first, and left behind, the others are relieved in succession.

85. When a sentinel sees the relief approaching he will halt, face to it, and bring his piece to a *shoulder*; at about six paces from the sentinel the sergeant will command: 1. *Relief*. 2. HALT, the sergeant will then add, No. 2, or No. 3, according to the number of the port, *Arms*—PORT, when the two sentinels, with arms at *port*, will approach each other; the old sentinel under the correction of the sergeant, will whisper the instructions to the new sentinel; this being done the two sentinels will shoulder arms, and the old sentinel will pass to his place in rear of the relief; the sergeant will then command: *Forward*—MARCH, and proceed in the same manner until the whole are relieved.

86. During the time of relieving the sentinels of the old guard, the commander of the new will proceed to

Digitized by Google

take possession of the guard house or guard tent, and all the articles and prisoners in charge of the guard, at the same time the old commander will give to the new all the instruction and information relating to his post.

87. The sentinels of the old guard having come in, it will be marched in front of the new guard at shouldered arms, the new standing at *present arms*, and officers saluting, when it will be conducted back to its regimental parade, their pieces drawn or discharged and dismissed; on rejoining their companies, chiefs of platoons will examine their arms, and cause them to be put away in good order.

88. When the old guard has marched off fifty paces the officer of the new guard will cause the guard to stack arms, then proceed to make himself acquainted with all the instructions for his post, visit the sentinels and question them and the sergeants, relative to the instructions they may have received from the old guard.

Officers of the day and guard.

89. Officers of the day will be detailed under the direction of the regimental commander, generally from the rank of majors; captains will be detailed as officers of the guard, and 2d lieutenants and sergeants to post and relieve sentinels.

Guards—their use and duty.

90. The principle guards are *first*, outposts, *second*, picket guards, *third* camp and garrison guards.

91. The outposts and picket guards will be detailed from the line and composed of either cavalry or infantry, or both, according to circumstances; they will be posted on the roads leading into camp, and in such positions as may be the most eligible for their security; their strength will depend upon their proximity to the enemy, and the nature of the position to be guarded.

92. The duties of outposts are so various that they will invariably require detailed instructions from the commanding officer to suit circumstances. The following directions will apply generally, and will be strictly observed so far as applicable.

93. All outpost guards will generally be ordered out with from *three* to *ten* days rations, which, circumstances permitting, should be ready cooked, and if a cavalry detachment, forage should be taken, sufficient for the time they are to be out; they will march out of camp to their station without trumpets sound-

Digitized by Google

ing or drums beating, and pay no compliment whatever to officers passing their posts.

94. As soon as an officer commanding an outpost arrives on his ground he must by a careful reconnoisance, make himself acquainted with not only the space he actually guards, but the heights around, within musket shot, the roads or trails leading to or near the post, ascertaining their breadth and practicability for cavalry or artillery, and regulate his position, to ensure a ready and constant communication with the adjoining post, by signals during the day, and by patrols during the night; he should examine all ravines that may cover the outpost of an enemy, and all the points from which he is most likely to be attacked; this vigilence is necessary to prevent surprises, and to enable him to act with promptnesss and decision if assailed during the night.

95. When a *deserter* comes in from the enemy he will be conveyed immediately to the commander of the outpost, who, after ascertaining from him such information as relates to his own post, will forward him under an escort to head-quarters.

96. The sentinel on outposts are posted so as best to observe the approach of an enemy, and at the same time with a view of communicating by signal with each other, and with the head-quarters of the outpost.

97. No officer or soldier will on any account be allowed to pass an outpost towards the enemy, unless they are on duty, or present a pass, signed by the commanding officer at head-quarters.

98. Persons bearing a *flag of truce* from the enemy are to be treated with attention and civility; but as such communications are frequently designed to gain intelligence and for reconnoisance, the most strict means must be adopted to frustrate such designs.

99. *Camp guards* are posted for the better security of the camp.

100. Sentinels will be relieved every two hours, unless the state of the weather or other circumstances should make it necessary to relieve them at a shorter or longer period.

101. Each relief, before being posted will be inspected by the officer of the guard, or of its post, the sergeant then posts it, and reports to him and presents the old relief on his return.

102. The *countersign* or watchword is given to such persons as may be entitled to pass the guard during the night, and to the officers, sergeants and sentinels of the guard.

103. As soon as the new guard is marched off the

Digitized by Google

new officer of the day will repair to the commanding officer's tent or quarters, and report for orders.

104. The officers of the day will visit the guards during the day, at such times as he may deem necessary, and make his rounds at night, at least once after 12 o'clock; he will see that the officer of the guard is furnished with the countersign before *retreat*, and upon being relieved will make such remarks in the report of the officer of the guard, as circumstances may require, and present the same at head-quarters.

105. The officers and men are to remain constantly at guard-quarters during the entire twenty-four hours duty, except while on post, or posting and relieving sentinels, unless by direct permission of the officer of the guard, when they may return to their quarters for their meals.

106. The officer of the guard will see that the countersign is communicated to the sentinels before twilight.

107. Sentinels must keep themselves on the alert, observing everything that takes place within sight or hearing of his post, and will not take orders or be relieved by any person, except an officer of the guard, or the officer of the day, or commanding officer, in which case such orders will be immediately communicated to the officer of the guard by the officer giving them.

108. Neither officers nor soldiers will take off their clothing or equipments while on detail as guard.

109. No sentinel will quit his post, or hold any conversation with any person, that does not attain to the proper discharge of his duty; and all persons of whatever rank in service, will be required to observe the greatest respect towards sentinels.

110. The sentnel at guard-quarters, when he sees any body of troops, or an officer entitled to compliment approach, must call "*turn out the guard*" and announce who approaches.

111. Guards do not turn out as a matter of compliment after sunset, but sentinels will when officers approach pay them proper attention by facing to the front and standing at *shouldered arms*.

112. After retreat, (or the hour appointed by the commanding officer) until broad daylight next morning a sentinel challenges every person that approaches him, taking at the same time the position of *charge bayonet*, he will suffer no person to come nearer than within reach of his bayonet, until that person has given him the countersign.

113. A sentinel in challenging will call out *who*

Digitized by Google

comes there? If answered, *friend with the countersign*, he will reply, *advance friend with the countersign*, if answered *relief*, *parole*, or *guard rounds*, he will reply *halt! advance officer (or sergeant) with the countersign!* and fully satisfy himself that the party is what it represents itself to be; if he has not authority to pass persons with the countersign, if the countersign is not correct, or if the person has not the countersign he will cause them to stand, and call *sergeant of the guard!* and keep them in that position until this officer approaches and relieves them or conducts them to guard-quarters.

114. In daytime when the sentinel before the guard-quarters sees the officer of the day approaching he will call *turn out the guard, officer of the day*, the guard will then be paraded and salute with presented arms.

115. When any person approaches guard-quarters at night, the sentinel before the post, after challenging, will cause him to stand until examined by the sergeant of the guard; if it be the officer of the day or any other person entitled to inspect the guard and to make the rounds, the sergeant will call *turn out the guard*, when the guard will be paraded at shouldered arms, and the officer, if he thinks necessary, may demand the countersign.

116. The officer of the day wishing to make the rounds, will take an escort of a sergeant and two or three men from guard-quarters; when the rounds are challenged by the sentinels the sergeant will answer *grand rounds*, and the sentinel will reply, *halt grand rounds, advance sergeant with the countersign*, upon which the sergeant advances and gives the countersign; the sentinel will then add: *advance rounds*, and stand at shouldered arms until they have passed.

117. When the sentinel before the guard challenges, and is answered *grand rounds*, he will reply *halt grand rounds! turn out the guard, grand rounds!* upon which the guard will be drawn up at shouldered arms; the officer of the guard will then order a sergeant and two men forward, and when within ten paces the sergeant challenges, the sergeant of the rounds answers *grand rounds*, the sergeant of the guard replies, *advance sergeant with the countersign*, the sergeant of the rounds advances alone and gives the countersign and returns to his rounds, the sergeant of the guard will face about and report to his officer *the countersign is correct*, on which the officer of the guard calls *advance rounds*.

118. The officer of the rounds advances alone, (the guard standing at shouldered arms,) along the front of the guard to the officer, orders back his escort,

Digitized by Google

takes a new one and proceeds in the same manner to the other guards.

119. Any general officer, or commandant of the post may visit the guards of his command, and go the grand rounds, and be received in the same manner as prescribed for the officer of the day.

120. All material instructions given to a sentinel by officers making the rounds will be promptly communicated to the officer of the guard.

Review.

121. Preparitory to a review the lieutenant-colonel will cause a camp-color to be placed about 120 paces in front of the centre of the regiment, where the reviewing officer is supposed to take his post; should the reviewing officer choose to quit that position, the color will be considered the point to which all movements and formations are relative.

122. The lieutenant-colonel will cause points to be marked at suitable distances, for the wheelings of subdivisions, so that their right right flanks in marching past, shall only be about four paces from the color, where the reviewing officer takes his post to receive the salute.

123. The regiment being in line, and the above dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Attention regiment.* 2. *Prepare for review.* 3. *To the rear, open order.* MARCH.

124. At the command *march*, the ranks will open as

FORM OF GUARD REPORT.

Report of a Guard, Mounted at on the day of , and relieved on the

Countersign.	2d Lieutenants.	Sergeants.	Musicians.	Privates.	Aggregate.	Articles in charge						Remarks
Detail.												

Digitized by Google

LIST OF THE GUARD.

No.	*Relief and When Posted.* 1st Relief From 8 to 10 and 2 to 4 — Name.	Co.	Regt.	2d. Relief From 10 to 12 and 4 to 6 — Name.	Co.	Regt.	3d Relief From 12 to 2 and 6 to 8 — Name.	Co.	Regt.	Where Posted.	REMARKS.
1	J. S.	A	10th.	I. J.	B	6th.	C. L.	R	7th.	Guard House, &c., &c.	
2	E. F.	A	10th.	K. L.	E	10th.	A. B.	R	7th.		
3	C. D.	B	6th.	W. H.	E	10th	S. T.	R	7th.		
1	2d Lieutenant, W. S.; Co. A., 10th Infantry.									Lt. Grd.	
2	Sergeant, H. W., Co. B., 6th Infantry.									Sgt. Grd.	
3	Sergeant, R. M., Co. H, 7th Infantry.									Sgt. Grd.	

Digitized by Google

LIST OF PRISONERS.

No.	Names.	Comp'y.	Reg'nt.	Confined. When	Confined. By Whom.	Charges.	Sentence	Rem'ks
1								
2								
3								
4								
5								

L. N. S.

Captain Co. A., 10th Infantry.

Commanding Guard.

indicated in regimental evolutions; the surgeon and staff not enumerated will take post on the extreme left on the line of captains, and the music on the right of the line, the whole faced to the front.

125. The reviewing officer first presents himself before the centre of the line, and when forty or fifty paces distant, the colonel will face the line and add: *present*—ARMS, then face to the front.

126. The men present arms, and officers salute, so as to drop the point of the sabre with the second motion of present arms, the music playing.

127. The reviewing officer having halted and acknowledged the salute the colonel will face the line and command: *Shoulder*—ARMS; when the men shoulder their pieces, the officers bring their sabres to a carry with the last motion, and the colonel faces again to the front.

128. The reviewing officer will then go towards the right, then pass along the front to the left flank, then around this flank and back along the rear to the right, the whole remaining perfectly steady without paying any further compliment; while the reviewing officer is going around the regiment, the band will play, and cease when he has returned to the right flank.

129. When the receiving officer turns off to place

Digitized by Google

himself by the camp-color in front, the colonel will face the line and command:

1. *Rear rank, close order.* 2. MARCH.

130. At the command *march*, the rear rank will close and all, except the music will resume their places as in line.

131. When the reviewing officer has taken his place by the camp-color, the colonel will command: 1. *By company.* 2. *Right wheel.* 3. *March;* when the regiment will break into column by companies, and the music will move forward about ten paces from the captain of the leading company, the colonel will then add:

4. *Pass in review.* 5. *Column forward.* 6. *Guide right* 7. MARCH.

132. At the command *march*, the column will be put in motion in common time and at shoulder arms; the colonel attended by the lieutenant-colonel and aide-de-camp will march eight or ten paces in advance of the leading company the majors six paces in advance of the centre of their respective leading companies, the surgeon and other staff officers not enumerated, eight paces in rear of the column,

133. Points having been fixed by the lieutenant-colonel, the changes of direction will be made at those points, by the command of chiefs of companies; the color will remain in the ranks whilst passing and saluting, and the guides and soldiers will keep their heads well to the front.

134. The music will begin to play at the command march, and after passing the reviewing officer will wheel left out of the column, and take a position opposite to and facing him, where it will continue to play until the rear of the column has passed, when it will cease, and march in rear of the regiment, unless the regiment is to pass *in quick time*, in which case it will keep its position.

135. The officers will salute the reviewing officer when they arrive within six paces of him, and recover their sabres when six paces past him; all officers in saluting will cast their eyes towards the reviewing officer.

136. The colonel, when he has saluted at the head of the column, will place himself near the reviewing officer, and remain there until the rear has passed, when he will rejoin the regiment.

137. The color will salute the reviewing officer when within six paces of him; when the color salutes the music will cheer.

138. When the rear of the column has passed, the

Digitized by Google

colonel will conduct it to the ground it marched from, and command, *guide left* in time for the guides to cover; the column having arrived on its former ground the colonel will command: 1. *Column.* 2. HALT, then form it in line, and cause the ranks to be opened as prescribed in 124; the review will terminate by the whole saluting as at the beginning.

139. The music at the command *halt*, will pass in rear to its place on the right.

140. If instructions have been previously given to march the regiment past in *quick time*, also, the colonel, instead of changing the guides, halting the column, or wheeling it into line, will command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

141. In passing the officer again no salute will be officered by either officers or men; the music will have kept its position opposite the reviewing officer, and at the last command will commence playing in *quick time*, and when the column approaches, will place itself in front and march off, continuing to play until the regiment is halted on its original ground of formation; the review will terminate in the same manner as indicated above.

142. The colonel will afterward cause the troops to perform such exercises and maneuvres as the reviewing officer may direct.

143. When two or more regiments are to be reviewed at the same time, they will be formed in parade order, with the proper intervals, and will perform the same movements prescribed for one regiment, observing the following additional directions.

144. The brigadier-general and his staff will place themselves opposite the centre of the brigade; the brigadier-general, twelve paces in front of the line of colonels, his adjutant two paces on his right, and one retired; the brigade quartermaster on the right of the line of lieutenant-colonels and aide-de-camps, and the surgeon on the left of the line of majors.

145. In passing in review, the brigadier-general will march four paces in front of the colonel of the leading regiment, his adjutant, and quartermaster on his left.

146. The brigadier-general will command, and cause to be executed all that is prescribed for a colonel on regimental review.

147. If several brigades are to be reviewed together, or in one line, the reviewing officer mounted, and joined by the general of division on the right of his division, will proceed down the line in front, and when near the brigadier-general, respectively, will be saluted by their brigades in succession; the music of

Digitized by Google

each, after the prescribed salute, will play while the reviewing officer is in front and in rear of it, and only then.

148. In marching, with several regiments in common time, the music of each succeeding regiment will commence to play when the music of the preceding one has ceased in order to follow its regiment; when marching in quick time the music will begin to play when the rear company of the preceding regiment has passed the reviewing officer.

Inspection.

149. The inspection of troops, as a regiment, brigade or division, will generally be preceded by a review.

150. The present example embraces a regiment of infantry; the inspecting officer and field and staff officers on foot.

151. The regiment being in line, the colonel will cause it to break into column by company right in front; he will then cause ranks to be opened, when the color-bearers and guard will, under the direction of the lieutenant-colonel, promptly place themselves six paces in advance of the music, which is in front of the column.

152. The colonel seeing the ranks aligned will command:

1. *Officers and sergeants, to the front of your companies.*
2. MARCH.

153. At the command *march*, the majors will promptly place themselves six paces in front of the centre of their respective leading companies; their adjutants two paces on their left; chiefs of platoons and their sergeants will at the same time promptly place themselves on the same line two paces in front of their respective companies; the colonel will then add:

3. *Order*—ARMS. 4. *Parade*—REST. 5. *Field and staff to the front.* 6. MARCH.

154. At the command *march*, the colonel and officers thus designated will form themselves in one rank two paces apart, and six paces in advance of the color, in the order of rank from right to left, the colonel on the prolongation of the line of right guides of the column.

155. The inspecting officer will commence in front; after inspecting the arms, dress and general appearance of the field and staff, he will proceed to make a minute inspection of the arms and accoutrements of each subdivision, in succession, accompanied by the

Digitized by Google

colonel; majors will in succession accompany the inspecting officer through their respective battalions.

156. As the inspector successively approaches a company or subdivision its chief will command:

1. *Attention company.* 2. *Inspection*—ARMS.

157. After the inspector has passed to the next company he will add:

3. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 4. *Close order.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Order*—ARMS. 7. REST.

158. The inspection being ended, the music will play and the companies will file off to their quarters or encampment conducted by the 1st lieutenants, where they will stack arms, and break ranks.

159. The company that is to escort the color will stand fast until the parade is cleared, then under the direction of the lieutenant-colonel or aide-de-camp, proceed to escort the colors back to headquarters.

160. The inspector, accompanied by the colonel and staff will next proceed to the quarters, guard-house, and such other places as he may deem proper to inspect, and then repair to headquarters, where the aide-de-camp will exhibit the regimental books and papers relating to the transaction of all branches of business pertaining to the regiment.

Escorts of Honor.

161. Escorts of honor may be composed of cavalry or infantry, or both, according to circumstances; they are guards of honor for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, either civil or military.

162. The troops for this purpose will be selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

163. The escort will be drawn up in line, the centre opposite the place where the personage is to present himself, with an interval between the wings to receive him and his retinue; on his appearance he will be received with all the honors due his rank; when he has taken his place in the line, the whole will be wheeled into column by platoons or companies, as the case may be, and the column put in march; the same ceremonies will be observed and the same honors paid on his leaving the escort.

164. When the position of an escort is at a considerable distance from the point where he is expected to be received, a double line of sentinels will be posted from that point to the escort, facing inward, and the sentinels will each successively salute as he passes.

165. On halting, an escort at the point where the

Digitized by Google

personage is to be received, the commander will direct an officer to wait upon him, and bring back any communication he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

Manner of issuing and distributing orders.

166. All military orders will be numbered, to commence and terminate with the year or campaign; those issued by the general-in-chief will be either *general* or *special*.

167. *General orders* are orders issued to all the militia of the State, and apply to every regiment, brigade, division, or seperate department.

168. *Special orders* does not pertain to the service in general, but relates to a particular corps, department or individuals, and are issued to such direct.

169. Orders issued from the headquarters of regiments, brigades or divisions, will be simply styled "*orders;*" they announce the orders of the day in camp or garrison, the time and place of issuing supplies, the time and order of march, the hours of the different beate and signals, and generally for the purpose of announcing any information or instruction necessary to be communicated to the troops.

Military Districts.

170. The militia of the State is composed of companies, battalions, regiments, brigades and divisions, which are divided into seperate military districts, and organized under a district commandant, with a rank proportionate to the number of men under his command.

171. A military district when duly organized becomes responsible for arming, equipping and furnishing its own *transportation* and *supplies* for all the troops that may be ordered into service from within its limits.

172. Every company battalion or regiment will provide themselves with arms and equipage (suited to their corps) and ammunition, and keep the same constantly on hand, and in condition for immediate service.

173. Each platoon will provide itself with one good army tent, of a capacity to accommodate twelve men, the requisite amount of cooking utensils, one baggage wagon, and the necessary team and teamsters to transport their own camp equipage and subsistence to any part of the State to which they may be ordered, and should keep constantly on hand, stored with the district quartermaster, at least thirty days' rations.

174. The camp equipage thus furnished, will be

Digitized by Google

marked with the letter of the company and No. of the platoon to which it belongs, and stored with, and receipted for, by the district quartermaster.

175. Teams and baggage wagons will not be deposited with the quartermaster except in extreme cases, but may be receipted for, and retained in the custody of the teamsters until required for service.

District Quartermasters.

176. District quartermasters will be required to provide good and sufficient storehouses, and store therein and keep in good condition, all subsistence, camp equipage and amunition belonging to the district; to store and keep in complete repair, all district ordnances, arms and accoutrements, that are not in the possession of the troops for immediate use; to provide subsistence and forage, and cause the same to be transported to the detachments from his district that are in service; to provide all articles of clothing and wearing appearel necessary for his troops while in the field, and cause the same to be forwarded to them; to purchase all books and stationery necessary for his district, and the detachments that may be in service, and cause them to be issued to those entitled to them, to fill all requisitions made upon him by the quartermaster-general, and generally, under the direction of the district commandant, to transact all the business pertaining to outfitting and supplying the troops while in service.

177. District quartermasters will make themselves thoroughly acquainted with the military resources of their districts, their facilities for furnishing and transporting military stores, and report the same to the quartermaster-general, as often as the nature of the case may require; all disbursements of supplies made to troops in service will be certified to by the district commandant, and reported to the quartermaster-general, quarterly; such report must state the kind, amount and value of supplies, and to whom issued, also the quality and amount yet remaining on hand.

178. Military stores will not be issued to any detachment or body of troops whatever, except by order of the district commandant, or the quartermaster-general, or upon a requisition signed by the chief of the detachment requiring them, and approved by the district commandant, and then only to the commissary of the detachment, or troops, or to an officer of that body, authorized to receive and receipt for the same.

Digitized by Google

179. Where there is no quartermaster provided by law in the staff of a district commander, should circumstances require, said commandant may appoint an officer of the line to act as such, for whose acts he will be responsible.

Commissaries of Subsistence.

180. Commissaries of subsistence will be held accountable for the safe keeping of all provisions entrusted to their charge; they will examine frequently into the condition of the stores, to prevent waste, and make out and transmit through the proper accounting officer to the district quartermaster the necessary returns and accounts.

181. It will be their duty to issue to the troops on requisitions signed by the commandant of the post, detachment or subdivision, as the case may be.

182. The followng will be the componant parts of the ration:—Sixteen ounces of pork or bacon, or one and a half pounds of fresh or salt beef, eighteen ounces of bread or flour, or twelve ounces of hard bread, and at the rate of four pounds of soap, two pounds of candles, two quarts of salt, four quarts of vinegar, ten quarts of beans or peas, and —— pounds of potatoes or other vegetables to the hundred rations.

183. At every post or station where supplies are deposited for the service of troops they will be placed in charge of a commissary or an assistant.

184. Regimental commissaries duty will be while in service to take charge of all the regimental baggage, wagons, teams and supplies, to issue to the troops on requisitions signed by the chiefs of companies, and approved by the commandant of the regiment or detachment to which he belongs, to make requisitions on the quartermaster or commissary's department for such stores as he may require which requisition must be countersigned by his commander, to keep a strict account of all receipts and disbursements by him made, and report the same to his district quartermaster as often as circumstances may require, and generally under the direction of his commandant to have the control of all the military stores and transportation belonging to his command,

Calling the militia into service.

185. Whenever it may become necessary to call the militia into service, the general or other officer authorized to make such call, will state in his order, to the district commandant the number of men required, how officered and the amount of supplies he will furnish them.

Digitized by Google

186. A detachment thus ordered will be mustered by the inspector-general, or other officer designated for that purpose by the officer making the call, before they will be considered in actual service.

187. The inspecting officer will first, carefully inspect the general appearance of the men, satisfy himself of their individual abilities, to perform the duties of the campaign, rejecting such as may be unfit for service, and call upon the district commandant, if necessary, to replace them with efficient men; he will then inspect their arms, equipage and means of transportation, and cause full and complete muster rolls to be made of their exact condition, including supples, forage, camp equipage and transportation, which report, accompanied by his certificate of examination he will cause to be forwarded immediately to the adjutant-general's office, or to the officer ordering the detachment into service.

188. All officers placed in command of such detachments will be required to receipt to the district quartermaster for, and become responsible for the proper distribution of all public arms, accoutrements and ammunition, and for all supplies and transportation placed under his control for the use of his command, and will, through his acting-commissary account for its proper disbursement and report the same back to his district quartermaster at the expiration of the campaign or as often as circumstances may require; all losses of animals, wagons or other property must be strictly accounted for in his report, and if lost or damaged through his neglect, will be charged to his account.

Arrests and confinements.

189. None but commanding officers are authorized to place officers under arrest; an officer under arrest will not wear his sabre or make a visit to his commanding officer, unless sent for, and in case of business, he will make his object known in writing.

190. It will not be obligatory on the commanding officer to place an officer under arrest on application to that effect from an officer under his command, in such cases he will exercise a second discretion.

191. The arrest of an officer, or the confinement of a soldier, will be, as soon as practicable reported to his immediate commander.

192. Officers placed under arrest may be released without being brought before a court martial, by the authortty ordering the arrest, or by a superior officer.

193. Individuals placed under guard with written charges, signed by an officer will not be released, ex-

Digitized by Google

cept by the direction of the commanding officer; all prisoners under guard, without written charges, will be released by the officers of the day at guard-mounting, unless orders to the contrary shall be given by the commanding officer.

Courts Martial.

194. Regimental or district courts martial may consist of any number of commissioned officers from *three* to *seven* inclusively, and a special judge-advocate; they will be detailed by the regimental or district commandant, and shall have jurisdiction in all cases arising under the militia laws of the State, when the president of the court ranks the officer or parties on trial.

195. In ordering a court martial it is not necessary to designate the president by name, as the officer highest in rank will preside.

196. In detailing officers to form a court martial it will be sufficient to order as many as can be convened without manifest injury to the service, within the limits prescribed above, of which the officer ordering must be the judge.

197. On the appointed day of meeting the court may consider itself authorized to organized and act, provided the number does not fall short of three, unless otherwise directed by the authority ordering the court.

198. The court after being duly organized, will rise and set upon its own adjournments.

199. All members of a court martial must be duly sworn, vote and give their opinions, begining with the youngest in rank.

200. In drawing up charges, the utmost precision must be observed in specifying the fact to which criminality is attached, and in describing the time when, and the place where such fact occured.

201. An officer has no right to demand a court martial, either on himself or others, the officer having authority to order a court, being the judge of its necessity or propriety; nor has an officer who may have been placed in arrest, any right to demand a trial, or to persist in considering himself under arrest after he shall have been released by proper authority.

202. After a prisoner has been arraigned on a specific charge it will be irregular for a court martial to admit any additional charges against him, though he may not have come on his defence; the trial on the charge first prefered will be concluded, after which the prisoner may be tried on any further accusation that may be brought against him.

Digitized by Google

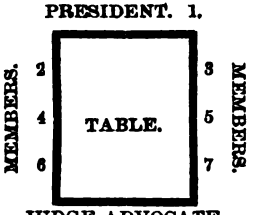
203. A prisoner cannot plead in bar of trial, that he has not been furnished with a copy of the charges or that the copy furnished him differs from the one on which he has been arraigned. It is proper to furnish him with a copy, but the omission shall not void, though it may postpone the trial.

204. The day and place of meeting of a court martial having been published in "orders," they will not be changed except by the authority ordering the same; the officers appointed as members, the parties and witnesses must attend accordingly.

205. The judge advocate at the opening will call over the names of the members who shall arraign themselves on the right and left of the president according to rank.

206. The prisoner will then be called into court and must appear without bonds of any kind unless there be danger of escape.

Manner of sitting at a court martial.



207. The following oath will then be administered to the court by the judge advocate: "You and each of you do solemnly swear that you will well and truly try and determine according to law and evidence, the matter now before you, between the people of the United States, in the State (or Territory) of and the prisoner to be tried, that you will duly administer justice, without partiality, favor or affection, and that you will not divulge the sentence of this court until it shall be published by proper authority; neither will you disclose or discover the vote or opinion of any member thereof, unless required to give evidence as a witness by a court of justice, in due course of law: so help your God."

Digitized by Google

208. The following oath will then be administered by the president to the judge advocate: "You do solemnly swear that you will not disclose or discover the opinion of any particular member of this court martial, unless required to give evidence thereof, as a witness by a court of justice in due course of law, nor divulge the sentence of this court to any but the proper authority, until it shall be duly disclosed by the same: so help you God."

209. The following is the oath administered by the judge advocate to the witnesses: "You (or each of you) do solemnly swear that the evidence you shall give in the case now in hearing, shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth, so help you God."

210. On the arraignment of a prisoner he must either plead *guilty* or *not guilty*, but if from obstinacy or design he shall stand mute, or answer foreign to the purpose, the court will proceed to trial as if he had plead "not guilty."

211. It is the duty of the judge advocate to prosecute all persons who may be brought before a court martial, but the officer who prefers the charges will be permitted to act in conjunction with him; the regular course of trial shall be as follows:

212. The prosecutor will call his witnesses and produces his written evidence, and may, if he wishes, be examined as a witness in support of the charges he has himself prefered; he must during the prosecution, and before the prisoner comes on his defence, produce all the evidence he has to support the charge.

213. The prosecution being closed the prisoner then enters on his defence, and adduces his evidence. In all cases where a prisoner produces evidence on his defence, the prosecutor has a right to reply, but he cannot adduce fresh evidence; unless new matter has been introduced on the defence; in which case he is allowed to controvert it by corresponding proof.

214. Both prosecutor and prisoner will be allowed to take exception to the competency of a witness; but such exceptions must be stated in open court and recorded on the proceedings, after which the court decides on their validity.

215. When no exception is made to a witness, he will be duly sworn, and then examined by the party producing him; the opposite party may then cross-examine him, and in case new matter be elicited by the cross-amination, the party calling him may re-examine as to the new matter; after which the court will ask such questions as it may think proper.

216. The examination being through, the court will

Digitized by Google

be closed, and then proceed to deliberate on its verdict; members of courts martial should then bear in mind that they have two distinct duties to perform, the one, that of *jurors*, the other that of *judges*.

217. In the first of these capacities they are bound to find a verdict, according to the evidence which has been produced before them; this verdict may be general, declaring the prisoner *guilty* or *not guilty* of the whole charge prefered against him, or it may be particular, finding that such and such allegations have been proved and acquitting the prisoner of the others.

218. In their other capacity; if the verdict be "guilty" all the members of a court martial, though a minority may have voted for the acquittal of the prisoner, are bound by their oath to duly administer justice, by awarding such a punishment as may be proportionable to the degree of guilt to which the said prisoner has been convicted.

219. In drawing up the findings and sentence of a court martial the utmost precission will be observed in specifying how far the prison is found guilty or not guilty of each charge or instance of charge, and in specifying the exact nature and degree of punishment which the court has awarded, which finding and sentence signed by the president and judge advocate will be transmitted to the officer ordering the court martial for his approval, as soon thereafter as practicable.

220. The approval of the sentence of a court martial should, when practicable, be made in a published order, which order will also declare the court disolved, provided there be no further business; otherwise the court will adjourn, as circumstances may direct until duly dissolved, by the authority oadering the same.

221. The authority ordering a court martial, may mitigate or repeal its decissions, even after their approval, provided new and sufficient evidence is produced to justify; in all such cases the mitigation or repeal shall be made in a published order, setting forth full and justifiable reasons.

Honors to be paid by the troops.

222. *The president* will be saluted with the highest honors, all standards and colors dropping, officers saluting, drums beating, and trumpets sounding; the same compliments will be paid the *vice-president*.

223. *The lieutenant-general* or *commander-in-chief* will be received by cavalry, with swords drawn, trumpets sounding, the advance and all officers saluting, colors dropping—by infantry, with drums beat-

Digitized by Google

ing, colors dropping, officers saluting and arms presented.

224. *A major-general* will be received—by cavalry with swords drawn, trumpets sounding, and officers saluting,—by infantry with three ruffles, colors dropping, officers saluting and arms presented.

225. *A brigadier-general* will be received—by cavalry with swords drawn, officers saluting,—by infantry with arms presented, officers saluting.

226. *The adjutant-general* or *inspector-general* will be received at review or inspection,—by cavalry with swords drawn, officers saluting,—by infantry, officers saluting and arms presented; the same honors will be paid to any field officer authorized to review and inspect the troops.

227. All guards will turn out and present arms to *general officers* as often as they may pass them; to *colonels*, the guards of their own regiments will turn out and present arms once a day only, after which they will turn out at shouldered arms.

228. To the *secretary of state, treasury, war and navy departments; to the chief justice, the president of the senate and speaker of the house of representatives of the United States, and to governors*, the same honors will be paid as prescribed for the general, commanding in chief.

229. The colors of a regiment passing a guard will be saluted with the utmost respect, the trumpets sounding or drums beating.

230. When two regiments meet on the march, the one inferior in rank will halt, form in parade order and salute the other regiment, which proceeds on the march at shoulder arms, colors flying, and drums beating until it has cleared the front of the regiment that has halted.

231. When general officers, or persons entitled to salute, pass in rear of a guard, the officer will only cause his men to stand at shoulder arms and not face his guard about.

232. All guards will be under arms when armed parties approach their posts; and to parties commanded by commissioned officers, they will present arms, drums beating, and officers saluting.

233. Sentinels will present arms to all general and field officers, and to the officers of the day; to all others they will carry their arms at a shoulder.

234. No compliments will be paid by guards or sentinels, between *retreat* and *reveille*, except those prescribed for *grand rounds*.

235. Sergeants with rifles at a carry, will salute by bringing the left hand across the body so as to strike the piece near the right shoulder; a soldier without

Digitized by Google

arms or with side arms only, meeting an officer, will salute by raising his hand to his cap, which officer will make a suitable acknowledgement for the compliment thus received.

Salutes.

236. *The President of the United States* is to receive a salute of twenty-one guns; the national salute is determined by the number of States in the Union, at the rate of one gun for each State.

237. *The vice-president* will be saluted with seventeen guns; the heads of the executive department of the general government, the general commanding in chief, governors of states and territories within their respective jurisdictions, fifteen guns.

238. *A major-general*, thirteen guns, *a brigadier-general*, eleven guns.

239. A general officer will be saluted but once in a year at each post, and only when notice of his intention to visit the post has been received; salutes to individuals are to be fixed on their arrival only.

240. A national salute will be fired at meridian, on the anniversary of the Independance of the United States, at each military post or camp.

Funeral Honors.

241. On the receipt of official intelligence of the death of the *President of the United States*, at any post or station, the commanding officer shall, on the following day, cause a gun to be fired at every half hour, beginning at sunrise andending at sunset.

242. On the day of the interment of a *major-general commanding in chief*, a gun will be fired at ever half hour until the procession moves, beginning at sunrise.

243. The funeral escort of the *general-in-chief* shall consist of a regiment of infantry, a battalion of cavalry and six pieces of artillery; that of a *major-general*, a regiment of infantry, a battalion of cavalry and four pieces of artillery; that of a *brigadier-general*, a regiment of infantry, one company of cavalry, and two pieces of artillery; that of a *colonel*, a regiment; that of a *lieutenant-colonel*, five companies; that of a *major*, two companies; that of a *captain*, one company and that of a lieutenant half a company.

244. The funeral escort should always be commanded by an officer of the same rank with the deceased, but if none such are present, by one of the next inferior grade.

245. The escort will be formed in two ranks opposite to the quarters or tent of the deceased, with shoul-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

dered arms and bayonets fixed, the artillery and cavalry on the right of the infantry.

246. On the appearance of the corpse, the officer in charge of the escort will command: *present*—ARMS, when the honors due the deceased will be paid by the drums and trumpets.

247. The music will then play and the coffin will be taken to the right and halted, the commanding officer will next add: *Shoulder*—ARMS. *By company (or platoon) left wheel*, MARCH. *Column forward, guide right*, MARCH.

248. The column will then be marched in common time to appropriate music, and on reaching the ground, will take a direction so that the guides shall be next to the grave, and when the centre of the column is abreast with it, the commander will add: *Column*—HALT. *Right into line wheel*, MARCH.

249. The coffin will then be brought along the front, and the officer will cause arms to be presented, after which, he will add: *Shoulder*—ARMS. *Order*—ARMS. *Parade*—REST.

250. After the coffin is lowered into the grave the officer will command: *Attention. Shoulder*—ARMS. *Load at will*, LOAD, when three rounds of small arms will be fired by the escort, taking care to elevate their pieces.

251. This being done he will add: *Shoulder*—ARMS. *By company (or platoon) right wheel*, MARCH. *Column forward, guide right*, MARCH, the music observing not to play until the escort has cleared the enclosure or burying ground.

Order of encampment for infantry.

252. Troops are on all occasions, where the nature of the ground will permit, encamped in the order of battle, in order that the front of the camp will only occupy the same extent of ground that the troops will, when drawn up into line.

253. The battalions will encamp in streets perpendicular to the line, one-half the tents (one company) on each side of the streets facing inwards.

254. The width of the streets will depend on the strength of the battalions; the distance between each tent of the same company will be four feet, that between the tents of each battalion, six feet.

255. The regiment being drawn up in line in front of the ground it is to occupy when in camp, the colonel will cause it to break by the left of companies to the rear into column, and after moving twice their length they will be halted, faced to the front, by the chiefs of companies and aligned by the right, the guides cover-

Digitized by Google

ing accurately; in this position presenting a column by company left in front, arms will be stacked, and tents pitched.

256. The tents of the right companies in each battalion will be pitched in their rear, the first on the prolongation of the line of right guides; those of the left companies immediately in their front, the first on the line of right guides and facing the tents of the right company in their respective battalions.

257. The tents of all the captains will be placed six paces from the left flank of their respective companies and on the prolongation of the line of company tents, each facing the street passing through his respective battalion; the majors will place their tents ten paces from that of the captain of their right company and on the same line, all facing to the left, their adjutants will pitch their tents a like distance from the captain of their left companies, on the same line and facing to the right.

258. The colonel's tent faced to the front, in the centre of the centre street and ten paces in rear of the line of majors' tents; the lieutenant-colonel's on the same line, faced to the front and in the centre of the street next on the right; the aide-de-camp's on the same line and in centre of the street next on the left; the commissary on the right in centre of first street, and the surgeon on the left in centre of fifth street, all on the same line and faced to the front.

259. The baggage wagons will be drawn up in line ten paces in rear of the colonel's tent and horses picketed in their rear.

260. The camp "guard quarters" will be stationed about two hundred paces in front, and on the prolongation of the centre street.

261. Companies will parade for inspection, roll call, &c., in the precise order indicated in No. 255, and in front of their respective tents, from which position the regiment may be formed instanter by each company facing right, and moving forward into line on the regimental parade.

Muster Rolls.

262. The *muster roll* of a *company* will contain the name of every officer, musician and private in the company, beginning with the captain, 1st lieutenant and musicians; after which the name of the 2d lieutenant, his sergeant and the men composing the first platoon will follow, next the officer, sergeant and men of 2d platoon; and thus from right to left; opposite each name insert in the proper columns the kind and amount of arms, ammunition, accoutrements and foot

Digitized by Google

up the same on the bottom of the report, making a grand total of each kind.

263. The *muster roll* of a *battalion* will contain only the names of the major, his adjutant and the captain of each company; opposite the name of each captain insert the letter of his company, the number of officers, musicians and privates, and the total amount and kind of arms, amunition, &c., in his respective company in the proper columns.

264. *Regimental returns* will contain the name of the colonel and entire staff in their proper order, and the names of the majors of battalions; opposite the names of majors will be inserted the strength of their respective commands, including arms, accoutrements, &c.

265. All muster rolls should be footed up at the bottom, showing the grand total, dated, giving the name of post or station, and signed by the commandant and adjutant.

Digitized by Google

MORNING REPORT of Company *Regiment* *Infantry, N. L.*

Commanded by Captain

Name.	Date.	
For Duty.		Captains.
		1st Lieutenants.
		2d Lieutenants.
		Sergeants.
		Musicians.
		Privates.
Sick.		Commissioned officers.
		Non-Commis'd officers.
		Musicians.
		Privates.
on extra or daily duty.		Commissioned officers.
		Non-Commis'd officers.
		Musicians.
		Privates.
In arrest or confinem't		Commissioned officers.
		Non-Commis'd officers.
		Musicians.
		Privates.
		Total present.
detach' service.		Commissioned officers.
		Non-Commis'd officers.
		Musicians.
		Privates.
Fur'ghs.		Commissioned officers.
		Non-Commis'd officers.
		Musicians.
		Privates.
w'hout leave.		
		Aggregate.
		Total Abstract.

Station *(Signed)* *L.S.*

A. C. ***1st Lieutenant.*** ***Captain Commanding.***

Digitized by Google

MUSTER ROLL of Company *Battalion*
Regiment Infantry *Military District.*
N. L., commanded by Capt. *mustered in*
City, *A. D.* 18 .

No.	Name.	Rank.	Mustered into service. When	Where	By Whom	Muskets.	Rifles.	U. S. Yaugers.	Shot Guns.	Colt's revol'rs.	lbs. powder.	lbs. lead.	Swords.	Trumpets.	Fifes.	Drums.	Remarks.

Station,

(*Signed*)

W. B.
1st Lieutenant.

A. B.
Capt. Commanding.

Digitized by Google

MUSTER ROLL of the Battalion, Regiment Infantry, Military District, Nauvoo Legion, Commanded by Major Mustered in A.D., 18

No.	Name.	Rank.	When Elected or Appointed.	Date of Commission.	Post or Station.	Letter of Company.	Coms'd and Non-Coms'd Officers, Musicians & Privates accounted for: Majors.	Captains.	1st Lieutenants.	2d Lieutenants.	Sergeants.	Musicians.	Privates.	Total.	Muskets.	Rifles.	U. S. Yaugers.	Shot Guns.	Colt's Revolvers	Lbs. of Powder.	Lbs. of Lead.	Swords.	Fifes.	Drums.	Trumpets.	Remarks.		

W. H. *Adjutant.* (Signed) W. W. *Major Commanding.*

Digitized by Google

REGIMENTAL RETURNS of the Regiment Infantry, Military District,
Nauvoo Legion, Commanded by Mustered in on the A.D., 18

No.	Name.	Rank.	When Elected or Appointed.	Date of Commission.	Post or Station.	Number of Battalion.	Colonels.	Lieut. Colonels.	Majors.	Captains.	1st Lieutenants.	2d Lieutenants.	Sergeants.	Musicians.	Privates.	Total.	Horses.	Saddles and Bridles.	Muskets.	Rifles.	U. S. Yangers.	Shot Guns.	Holsters.	Revolvers.	Lbs. Powder.	Lbs. Lead.	Swords.	Trumpets.	Rifles.	Drums.	Remarks.
							Commissioned & Non-Commissioned Officers, Musicians, and Privates accounted for.																								

Headquarters of the Regiment, City, the A.D., 18

(Signed) W.S., Col. Commanding.
S. M., Aid-de-Camp (or Adjutant.)

Digitized by Google

PROVISION RETURN for Company

Regiment Infantry, Commanded by Capt.

for days, commencing and ending 18

| | | |

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google